

AVEVA[™] System Platform

Installation Guide

Version 2023



© 2022 AVEVA Group plc and its subsidiaries. All rights reserved.

No part of this documentation shall be reproduced, stored in a retrieval system, or transmitted by any means, electronic, mechanical, photocopying, recording, or otherwise, without the prior written permission of AVEVA. No liability is assumed with respect to the use of the information contained herein.

Although precaution has been taken in the preparation of this documentation, AVEVA assumes no responsibility for errors or omissions. The information in this documentation is subject to change without notice and does not represent a commitment on the part of AVEVA. The software described in this documentation is furnished under a license agreement. This software may be used or copied only in accordance with the terms of such license agreement.

ArchestrA, Avantis, Citect, DYNSIM, eDNA, EYESIM, InBatch, InduSoft, InStep, IntelaTrac, InTouch, OASyS, PIPEPHASE, PRISM, PRO/II, PROVISION, ROMeo, SIM4ME, SimCentral, SimSci, Skelta, SmartGlance, Spiral Software, WindowMaker, WindowViewer, and Wonderware are trademarks of AVEVA and/or its subsidiaries. An extensive listing of AVEVA trademarks can be found at: <u>https://sw.aveva.com/legal</u>. All other brands may be trademarks of their respective owners.

Publication date: Wednesday, July 13, 2022

Publication ID: 853173

Contact Information

AVEVA Group plc High Cross Madingley Road Cambridge CB3 0HB. UK

https://sw.aveva.com/

For information on how to contact sales and customer training, see https://sw.aveva.com/contact.

For information on how to contact technical support, see https://sw.aveva.com/support.

To access the AVEVA Knowledge and Support center, visit https://softwaresupport.aveva.com.



Contents

Important	Notice for Highly Secured Environments (TLS 1.2 Exclusively)	
License Ins	stallation and Activation	
AVEVA Sys	tem Monitor Installation	
Selecting S	ystem Platform and System Platform Enterprise Components	
Supported Suppor	Operating Systems for System Platform 2023	
System Siz	ing Guidelines	
Supported	and Recommended Node Hardware Types.	
Required I	nstallation Order of Additional Products	
Common C	Components	
Windows I	Network Configuration	
System Pla SQL Ser Unsupp	Itform Prerequisites over Requirements for System Platform Components	
Selecting a About F About F	Type of Installation Product-Based Installation Role-Based Installation	
Network A About I	A ccount. Network Account Privileges.	
Chanter 2	Installing System Platform	

Install InTouch Access Anywhere Server.	41
Secure Gateway Installation.	42
Configuring Ports for the InTouch Access Anywhere Secure Gateway.	43
Install the Secure Gateway and Authentication Server Separately or Together	44
Install All Components on a Single Server	45

Chapter 3 Configuring System Platform Components	•	47
Using the Configurator		47
Common Platform.		48
System Management Server Configuration.		49
User Credentials for Configuring the System Management Server		53

AVEVA

Redundant SSO Configuration	53
Advanced Configuration Options.	53
Certificates Tab.	54
Ports Tab	
Communications Tab.	
Authentication Provider Configuration.	58
Configure the AVEVA Identity Manager.	60
License Mode Configuration.	66
Designing a Robust SSO System with an External Authentication Provider	
Recommended SMS Architecture Utilizing an Authentication Provider	
Simplified SMS Architecture Utilizing an Authentication Provider.	69
Minimum SMS Architecture Utilizing an Authentication Provider.	70
Industrial Graphic Server Configuration.	70
AVEVA Historian Configuration.	
Using HTTPS Instead of HTTP for Historian Client, Historian Client Web, and REST APIs.	
Enabling Trust for a Self-Signed Certificate.	
Acquiring a Copy of the Self-Signed Certificate	
Trusting a Self-Signed Certificate	
AVEVA Enterprise License Server Configuration.	
AVEVA System Monitor Configuration	87
System Monitor Manager Configuration	88
Email Server Configuration	89
Advanced System Monitor Configuration.	
Advanced System Monitor Configuration	
Advanced System Monitor Configuration. System Restart after Configuration.	91 92
Advanced System Monitor Configuration. System Restart after Configuration.	
Advanced System Monitor Configuration. System Restart after Configuration. Chapter 4 Upgrading, Modifying, and Repairing System Platform.	
Advanced System Monitor Configuration. System Restart after Configuration. Chapter 4 Upgrading, Modifying, and Repairing System Platform. AVEVA Application Server Upgrade.	
Advanced System Monitor Configuration. System Restart after Configuration. Chapter 4 Upgrading, Modifying, and Repairing System Platform. AVEVA Application Server Upgrade. About Upgrading Application Server.	
Advanced System Monitor Configuration. System Restart after Configuration. Chapter 4 Upgrading, Modifying, and Repairing System Platform. AVEVA Application Server Upgrade. About Upgrading Application Server. Upgradeable Application Server Components.	
Advanced System Monitor Configuration. System Restart after Configuration. Chapter 4 Upgrading, Modifying, and Repairing System Platform. AVEVA Application Server Upgrade. About Upgrading Application Server. Upgradeable Application Server Components. Windows Upgrades.	
Advanced System Monitor Configuration. System Restart after Configuration. Chapter 4 Upgrading, Modifying, and Repairing System Platform. AVEVA Application Server Upgrade. About Upgrading Application Server. Upgradeable Application Server Components. Windows Upgrades. SQL Server Upgrades.	91 92 93 93 96 96 99 99
Advanced System Monitor Configuration. System Restart after Configuration. Chapter 4 Upgrading, Modifying, and Repairing System Platform. AVEVA Application Server Upgrade. About Upgrading Application Server. Upgradeable Application Server Components. Windows Upgrades. SQL Server Upgrades. Issues with Legacy Common Components.	91 92 93 93 96 96 99
Advanced System Monitor Configuration. System Restart after Configuration. Chapter 4 Upgrading, Modifying, and Repairing System Platform. AVEVA Application Server Upgrade. About Upgrading Application Server. Upgradeable Application Server Components. Windows Upgrades. SQL Server Upgrades. Issues with Legacy Common Components. Basic Upgrade Sequence.	91 92 93 93 96 96 99 100 100 100 100 100
Advanced System Monitor Configuration. System Restart after Configuration. Chapter 4 Upgrading, Modifying, and Repairing System Platform. AVEVA Application Server Upgrade. About Upgrading Application Server. Upgradeable Application Server Components. Windows Upgrades. SQL Server Upgrades. Issues with Legacy Common Components. Basic Upgrade Sequence. Upgrading a Galaxy Repository Node.	91 92 93 93 96 96 99 99 100 100 100 100 100 101
Advanced System Monitor Configuration. System Restart after Configuration. Chapter 4 Upgrading, Modifying, and Repairing System Platform. AVEVA Application Server Upgrade. About Upgrading Application Server. Upgradeable Application Server. Upgradeable Application Server Components. Windows Upgrades. SQL Server Upgrades. Issues with Legacy Common Components. Basic Upgrade Sequence. Upgrading a Galaxy Repository Node. Upgrading an IDE-only Node.	91 92 93 93 96 96 99 100 100 100 100 100 101 102
Advanced System Monitor Configuration. System Restart after Configuration. Chapter 4 Upgrading, Modifying, and Repairing System Platform. AVEVA Application Server Upgrade. About Upgrading Application Server. Upgradeable Application Server Components. Windows Upgrades. SQL Server Upgrades. Issues with Legacy Common Components. Basic Upgrade Sequence. Upgrading a Galaxy Repository Node. Upgrading an IDE-only Node. Migrating the Galaxy Database.	91 92 93 93 96 96 99 100 100 100 100 100 101 102 102 102
Advanced System Monitor Configuration. System Restart after Configuration. Chapter 4 Upgrading, Modifying, and Repairing System Platform. AVEVA Application Server Upgrade. About Upgrading Application Server. Upgradeable Application Server Components. Windows Upgrades. SQL Server Upgrades. Issues with Legacy Common Components. Basic Upgrade Sequence. Upgrading a Galaxy Repository Node. Upgrading an IDE-only Node. Upgrading Run-Time Nodes.	91 92 92 93 93 96 96 99 100 100 100 100 100 101 102 102 102 103
Advanced System Monitor Configuration. System Restart after Configuration. Chapter 4 Upgrading, Modifying, and Repairing System Platform. AVEVA Application Server Upgrade. About Upgrading Application Server. Upgradeable Application Server Components. Windows Upgrades. SQL Server Upgrades. Issues with Legacy Common Components. Basic Upgrade Sequence. Upgrading a Galaxy Repository Node. Upgrading an IDE-only Node. Migrating the Galaxy Database. Upgrading Run-Time Nodes. Upgrading Redundant Pairs.	91 92 92 93 96 96 99 99 100 100 100 100 100 101 102 102 102 103 104
Advanced System Monitor Configuration. System Restart after Configuration. Chapter 4 Upgrading, Modifying, and Repairing System Platform. AVEVA Application Server Upgrade. About Upgrading Application Server. Upgradeable Application Server Components. Windows Upgrades. SQL Server Upgrades. Issues with Legacy Common Components. Basic Upgrade Sequence. Upgrading a Galaxy Repository Node. Upgrading an IDE-only Node. Migrating the Galaxy Database. Upgrading Run-Time Nodes. Upgrading Redundant Pairs. Upgrade Considerations for Multi-Galaxy Communication.	91 92 93 93 96 96 99 100 100 100 100 100 100 100 100 101 102 102
Advanced System Monitor Configuration. System Restart after Configuration. Chapter 4 Upgrading, Modifying, and Repairing System Platform. AVEVA Application Server Upgrade. About Upgrading Application Server. Upgradeable Application Server Components. Windows Upgrades. SQL Server Upgrades. Issues with Legacy Common Components. Basic Upgrade Sequence. Upgrading a Galaxy Repository Node. Upgrading a IDE-only Node. Migrating the Galaxy Database. Upgrading Run-Time Nodes. Upgrading Redundant Pairs. Upgrade Considerations for Multi-Galaxy Communication. Modifying an Installation.	91 92 92 93 96 96 99 99 100 100 100 100 100 101 102 102 102 102
Advanced System Monitor Configuration. System Restart after Configuration. Chapter 4 Upgrading, Modifying, and Repairing System Platform. AVEVA Application Server Upgrade. About Upgrading Application Server. Upgradeable Application Server Components. Windows Upgrades. SQL Server Upgrades. Issues with Legacy Common Components. Basic Upgrade Sequence. Upgrading a Galaxy Repository Node. Upgrading a IDE-only Node. Migrating the Galaxy Database. Upgrading Redundant Pairs. Upgrade Considerations for Multi-Galaxy Communication. Modifying an Installation. Repairing an Installation.	91 92 93 93 96 96 99 100 100 100 100 100 100 100 100 102 102
Advanced System Monitor Configuration. System Restart after Configuration. Chapter 4 Upgrading, Modifying, and Repairing System Platform. AVEVA Application Server Upgrade. About Upgrading Application Server. Upgradeable Application Server Components. Windows Upgrades. SQL Server Upgrades. Issues with Legacy Common Components. Basic Upgrade Sequence. Upgrading a Galaxy Repository Node. Upgrading an IDE-only Node. Upgrading Run-Time Nodes. Upgrading Redundant Pairs. Upgrade Considerations for Multi-Galaxy Communication. Modifying an Installation. Repairing an Installation.	91 92 92 93 93 96 96 99 99 100 100 100 100 100 101 102 102 102 102
Advanced System Monitor Configuration. System Restart after Configuration. Chapter 4 Upgrading, Modifying, and Repairing System Platform. AVEVA Application Server Upgrade. About Upgrading Application Server. Upgradeable Application Server Components. Windows Upgrades. SQL Server Upgrades. Issues with Legacy Common Components. Basic Upgrade Sequence. Upgrading a Galaxy Repository Node. Upgrading an IDE-only Node. Upgrading an IDE-only Node. Upgrading Run-Time Nodes. Upgrading Redundant Pairs. Upgrade Considerations for Multi-Galaxy Communication. Modifying an Installation. Repairing an Installation. Chapter 5 Uninstalling AVEVA System Platform.	91 92 93 93 96 96 99 100 100 100 100 100 100 100 100 100
Advanced System Monitor Configuration. System Restart after Configuration. Chapter 4 Upgrading, Modifying, and Repairing System Platform. AVEVA Application Server Upgrade. About Upgrading Application Server. Upgradeable Application Server Components. Windows Upgrades. SQL Server Upgrades. Issues with Legacy Common Components. Basic Upgrade Sequence. Upgrading a Galaxy Repository Node. Upgrading an IDE-only Node. Migrating the Galaxy Database. Upgrading Run-Time Nodes. Upgrading Redundant Pairs. Upgrading Redundant Pairs. Upgrading an Installation. Repairing an Installation. Chapter 5 Uninstalling AVEVA System Platform. Uninstall a System Platform Component.	91 92 92 93 96 96 99 99 00 100 100 100 100 100 100 100 10
Advanced System Monitor Configuration. System Restart after Configuration. Chapter 4 Upgrading, Modifying, and Repairing System Platform. AVEVA Application Server Upgrade. About Upgrading Application Server. Upgradeable Application Server Components. Windows Upgrades. SQL Server Upgrades. Issues with Legacy Common Components. Basic Upgrade Sequence. Upgrading a Galaxy Repository Node. Upgrading a Galaxy Database. Upgrading the Galaxy Database. Upgrading Redundant Pairs. Upgrading Redundant Pairs. Upgrade Considerations for Multi-Galaxy Communication. Modifying an Installation. Repairing an Installation. Chapter 5 Uninstalling AVEVA System Platform. Uninstall a System Platform Component.	91 92 93 93 96 96 99 100 100 100 100 100 100 100 100 100



Chapter 6 Security and Permissions
Enhanced Security for Connecting to a Galaxy 117
Modifying the Network Account.117Change the Network Account from the CLI.117
SQL Server Rights Requirements 118
Setting the SQL Server Security Mode
Restoring Required SQL Server Accounts. 120
Setting the FIPS Security Policy Option 120
Chapter 7 Configuring SQL Server. 121
SQL Server Requirements
Working with SQL Server Versions.122SQL Server not found on node: small configuration.123SQL Server not found on node: medium and larger configurations.123
Compatible version of SQL Server already installed. 123 New version of SQL Server already installed. 123 Image: SQL Server already installed. 123
Incompatible version of SQL Server already installed
Using a Non-Default Port for SQL Server. 124 Setting a Windows Firewall Exception for the SQL Server Port. 125
Chapter 8 AVEVA InTouch HMI Requirements and Prerequisites
Installing OI Gateway and Upgrading from FS Gateway
Installing OI Gateway and Upgrading from FS Gateway. 126 Compatibility with Existing FS Gateway Applications. 127 OI Gateway Installation Scenarios. 128
Installing OI Gateway and Upgrading from FS Gateway. 126 Compatibility with Existing FS Gateway Applications. 127 OI Gateway Installation Scenarios. 128 Chapter 9 AVEVA Historian Server Requirements and Recommendations. 131
Installing OI Gateway and Upgrading from FS Gateway. 126 Compatibility with Existing FS Gateway Applications. 127 OI Gateway Installation Scenarios. 128 Chapter 9 AVEVA Historian Server Requirements and Recommendations. 131 Server Requirements. 131 High Availability Support. 133
Installing OI Gateway and Upgrading from FS Gateway. 126 Compatibility with Existing FS Gateway Applications. 127 OI Gateway Installation Scenarios. 128 Chapter 9 AVEVA Historian Server Requirements and Recommendations. 131 Server Requirements. 131 High Availability Support. 133 Requirements for Historian Management Tools. 133
Installing OI Gateway and Upgrading from FS Gateway. 126 Compatibility with Existing FS Gateway Applications. 127 OI Gateway Installation Scenarios. 128 Chapter 9 AVEVA Historian Server Requirements and Recommendations. 131 Server Requirements. 131 High Availability Support. 133 Requirements for Historian Management Tools. 133 Remote IDAS Requirements. 133 Security Considerations for a Remote IDAS. 134
Installing OI Gateway and Upgrading from FS Gateway. 126 Compatibility with Existing FS Gateway Applications. 127 OI Gateway Installation Scenarios. 128 Chapter 9 AVEVA Historian Server Requirements and Recommendations. 131 Server Requirements. 131 High Availability Support. 133 Requirements for Historian Management Tools. 133 Remote IDAS Requirements. 133 Security Considerations for a Remote IDAS. 134 Disk Sizing and Data Storage. 134 Planning for Disk Space Requirements. 135 Planning for Disk Space Requirements. 135
Installing OI Gateway and Upgrading from FS Gateway. 126 Compatibility with Existing FS Gateway Applications. 127 OI Gateway Installation Scenarios. 128 Chapter 9 AVEVA Historian Server Requirements and Recommendations. 131 Server Requirements. High Availability Support. 133 Requirements for Historian Management Tools. Remote IDAS Requirements. 133 Security Considerations for a Remote IDAS. 134 Disk Sizing and Data Storage. 135 Planning for Disk Space Requirements. 135 Disk Space Requirements for Database Files. 135 Disk Space Requirements for Historial Data Eiles 136
Installing OI Gateway and Upgrading from FS Gateway. 126 Compatibility with Existing FS Gateway Applications. 127 OI Gateway Installation Scenarios. 128 Chapter 9 AVEVA Historian Server Requirements and Recommendations. 131 Server Requirements. 131 High Availability Support. 133 Requirements for Historian Management Tools. 133 Remote IDAS Requirements. 133 Security Considerations for a Remote IDAS. 134 Disk Sizing and Data Storage. 135 Planning for Disk Space Requirements. 135 Disk Space Requirements for Historical Data Files. 135 Disk Space Requirements for Historical Data Files. 136 Storage and Network Transmission Sizes for Tags. 136
Installing OI Gateway and Upgrading from FS Gateway. 126 Compatibility with Existing FS Gateway Applications. 127 OI Gateway Installation Scenarios. 128 Chapter 9 AVEVA Historian Server Requirements and Recommendations. 131 Server Requirements. 131 High Availability Support. 133 Requirements for Historian Management Tools. 133 Security Considerations for a Remote IDAS. 134 Disk Sizing and Data Storage. 134 General Hardware Recommendations for Storage. 135 Planning for Disk Space Requirements. 135 Disk Space Requirements for Historical Data Files. 135 Disk Space Requirements for Historical Data Files. 136 Storage and Network Transmission Sizes for Tags. 136 Disk Space Estimation. 138
Installing OI Gateway and Upgrading from FS Gateway. 126 Compatibility with Existing FS Gateway Applications. 127 OI Gateway Installation Scenarios. 128 Chapter 9 AVEVA Historian Server Requirements and Recommendations. 131 Server Requirements. 131 High Availability Support. 133 Requirements for Historian Management Tools. 133 Security Considerations for a Remote IDAS. 134 Oisk Sizing and Data Storage. 135 Planning for Disk Space Requirements. 135 Disk Space Requirements for Historical Data Files. 135 Disk Space Requirements for Historical Data Files. 136 Storage and Network Transmission Sizes for Tags. 136 Disk Space Estimation. 138 Bandwidth Estimation for Streaming Data. 138
Installing OI Gateway and Upgrading from FS Gateway. 126 Compatibility with Existing FS Gateway Applications. 127 OI Gateway Installation Scenarios. 128 Chapter 9 AVEVA Historian Server Requirements and Recommendations. 131 Server Requirements. 131 High Availability Support. 133 Requirements for Historian Management Tools. 133 Security Considerations for a Remote IDAS. 134 Disk Sizing and Data Storage. 135 Planning for Disk Space Requirements. 135 Disk Space Requirements for Historial Data Files. 135 Disk Space Requirements for Historial Data Files. 136 Storage and Network Transmission Sizes for Tags. 136 Disk Space Estimation. 138 Bandwidth Estimation for Streaming Data. 138 Bandwidth Estimation for Streaming Data. 138 Bandwidth Estimation for Streaming Data. 139
Installing OI Gateway and Upgrading from FS Gateway.126Compatibility with Existing FS Gateway Applications.127OI Gateway Installation Scenarios.128Chapter 9 AVEVA Historian Server Requirements and Recommendations.131Server Requirements.133Requirements.133Requirements for Historian Management Tools.133Requirements for Historian Management Tools.133Requirements for Historian Management Tools.133Requirements for Historian Management Tools.134Disk Sequirements.135Security Considerations for a Remote IDAS.134Oisk Sizing and Data Storage.135136137138139139130131132133134135135136137138139139130130131132133133134135135136137138139130131131132133134135135136137138139139130 <td< td=""></td<>

AVEVA

Server Loading.	141
IDAS Performance.	142
Storage Subsystem Performance	142
Networking Recommendations.	143
Client Access.	144
Support for Non-English Operating Systems.	144
Integration with Other AVEVA Products.	145
System Sizing Examples.	145
Process Historian Sizing Examples.	145
Server 1 (Non-Tiered): 2.4 GHz Single Processor Quad-Core CPU	145
Server 2 (Non-Tiered): Four Dual-Core 2.7 GHz CPUs.	147
Server 3 (Non-Tiered): Four Dual-Core 3.4 GHz CPUs	149
Server 4 (Tier-2): Eight Dual-Core 2.67 GHz CPUs (Hyper Threaded).	150
SCADA (Tiered) Historian Sizing Examples.	151
Topology 1: Centralized Tiered Historian Topology on a Slow/Intermittent Network.	151
Iopology 2: Centralized Tiered Historian Topology for a Single Physical Location.	153
lopology 3: Simple Hered Historian lopology for a Modem Configuration.	155
Chapter 10 AVEVA Historian Server Installation and Configuration	158
Preparing for the Historian Installation.	158
Microsoft SQL Server Installation.	158
Historian Installation Features.	159
Historian Installation Features. About Historian Installation.	159 160
Historian Installation Features. About Historian Installation. Testing the Installation.	159 160 161
Historian Installation Features. About Historian Installation. Testing the Installation. Antivirus Software.	159 160 161 161
Historian Installation Features. About Historian Installation. Testing the Installation. Antivirus Software. Historian Menu Shortcuts.	159 160 161 161 161
Historian Installation Features. About Historian Installation. Testing the Installation. Antivirus Software. Historian Menu Shortcuts. Repairing the Historian.	159 160 161 161 161 162
Historian Installation Features. About Historian Installation. Testing the Installation. Antivirus Software. Historian Menu Shortcuts. Repairing the Historian. Modifying the Historian Installation.	159 160 161 161 161 162 162
Historian Installation Features. About Historian Installation. Testing the Installation. Antivirus Software. Historian Menu Shortcuts. Repairing the Historian. Modifying the Historian Installation. Uninstalling the Historian.	 159 160 161 161 162 162 162 162
Historian Installation Features. About Historian Installation. Testing the Installation. Antivirus Software. Historian Menu Shortcuts. Repairing the Historian. Modifying the Historian Installation. Uninstalling the Historian. Upgrading from a Previous Version.	 159 160 161 161 162 162 162 162 162
Historian Installation Features. About Historian Installation. Testing the Installation. Antivirus Software. Historian Menu Shortcuts. Repairing the Historian. Modifying the Historian Installation. Uninstalling the Historian. Upgrading from a Previous Version. About Database Migration.	 159 160 161 161 162 162 162 162 162 162
Historian Installation Features. About Historian Installation. Testing the Installation. Antivirus Software. Historian Menu Shortcuts. Repairing the Historian. Modifying the Historian Installation. Uninstalling the Historian. Upgrading from a Previous Version. About Database Migration. Upgrading the Historian Version (Microsoft SQL Server 32-bit).	 159 160 161 161 162 162 162 162 162 163
Historian Installation Features. About Historian Installation. Testing the Installation. Antivirus Software. Historian Menu Shortcuts. Repairing the Historian. Modifying the Historian Installation. Uninstalling the Historian. Upgrading from a Previous Version. About Database Migration. Upgrading the Historian Version (Microsoft SQL Server 32-bit). Upgrading the Historian Version.	 159 160 161 161 162 162 162 162 162 163 163
Historian Installation Features. About Historian Installation. Testing the Installation. Antivirus Software. Historian Menu Shortcuts. Repairing the Historian. Modifying the Historian Installation. Uninstalling the Historian. Upgrading from a Previous Version. About Database Migration. Upgrading the Historian Version (Microsoft SQL Server 32-bit). Upgrading the Historian Version. Migration of History Data Stored in SQL Server.	 159 160 161 161 162 162 162 162 163 163 164
Historian Installation Features. About Historian Installation. Testing the Installation. Antivirus Software. Historian Menu Shortcuts. Repairing the Historian. Modifying the Historian Installation. Uninstalling the Historian. Upgrading from a Previous Version. About Database Migration. Upgrading the Historian Version (Microsoft SQL Server 32-bit). Upgrading the Historian Version. Migration of History Data Stored in SQL Server.	 159 160 161 161 162 162 162 162 163 163 164
Historian Installation Features. About Historian Installation. Testing the Installation. Antivirus Software. Historian Menu Shortcuts. Repairing the Historian. Modifying the Historian Installation. Uninstalling the Historian Installation. Upgrading from a Previous Version. About Database Migration. Upgrading the Historian Version (Microsoft SQL Server 32-bit). Upgrading the Historian Version. Migration of History Data Stored in SQL Server. Chapter 11 AVEVA Historian Client Information.	 159 160 161 161 162 162 162 162 163 164
Historian Installation Features. About Historian Installation. Testing the Installation. Antivirus Software. Historian Menu Shortcuts. Repairing the Historian. Modifying the Historian Installation. Uninstalling the Historian. Upgrading from a Previous Version. About Database Migration. Upgrading the Historian Version (Microsoft SQL Server 32-bit). Upgrading the Historian Version. Migration of History Data Stored in SQL Server. Chapter 11 AVEVA Historian Client Information. About the Historian Client.	 159 160 161 161 162 162 162 163 163 164 165
Historian Installation Features. About Historian Installation. Testing the Installation. Antivirus Software. Historian Menu Shortcuts. Repairing the Historian. Modifying the Historian Installation. Uninstalling the Historian Installation. Upgrading from a Previous Version. About Database Migration. Upgrading the Historian Version (Microsoft SQL Server 32-bit). Upgrading the Historian Version. Migration of History Data Stored in SQL Server. Chapter 11 AVEVA Historian Client Information. About the Historian Client. Historian Client Components.	 159 160 161 161 162 162 162 163 163 164
Historian Installation Features. About Historian Installation. Testing the Installation. Antivirus Software. Historian Menu Shortcuts. Repairing the Historian. Modifying the Historian Installation. Uninstalling the Historian. Upgrading from a Previous Version. About Database Migration. Upgrading the Historian Version (Microsoft SQL Server 32-bit). Upgrading the Historian Version. Migration of History Data Stored in SQL Server. Chapter 11 AVEVA Historian Client Information. About the Historian Client. Historian Client Components. Desktop Applications.	 159 160 161 161 162 162 162 163 163 164 165 165 165 165
Historian Installation Features. About Historian Installation. Testing the Installation. Antivirus Software. Historian Menu Shortcuts. Repairing the Historian. Modifying the Historian Installation. Uninstalling the Historian. Upgrading from a Previous Version. About Database Migration. Upgrading the Historian Version (Microsoft SQL Server 32-bit). Upgrading the Historian Version. Migration of History Data Stored in SQL Server. Chapter 11 AVEVA Historian Client Information. About the Historian Client. Historian Client Components. Desktop Applications. Microsoft Office Add-Ins.	 159 160 161 161 162 162 162 163 163 164 165 165 165 165 165 165 165
Historian Installation Features. About Historian Installation. Testing the Installation. Antivirus Software. Historian Menu Shortcuts. Repairing the Historian. Modifying the Historian Installation. Uninstalling the Historian Installation. Upgrading from a Previous Version. About Database Migration. Upgrading the Historian Version (Microsoft SQL Server 32-bit). Upgrading the Historian Version. Migration of History Data Stored in SQL Server. Chapter 11 AVEVA Historian Client Information. About the Historian Client. Historian Client Components. Desktop Applications. Microsoft Office Add-Ins. ActiveX and .NET Controls.	 159 160 161 161 162 162 162 163 163 164



Support for Operating System Language Versions	6
Chapter 12 AVEVA Historian Client Installation and Configuration 167	7
About Historian Client Installation 167	7
Using Historian Client Software with Roaming Profiles 167	7
Repairing the Historian Client Installation. 168	B
Uninstalling Historian Client	B
Upgrading from a Previous Version	8
Appendix A Using Silent Installation 169	9
Starting Silent Installation	9
Using Response Files	1
Creating a Response File	2
Response File Entry to Acknowledge Installation Change Information (Redistributable Libraries) 174	4
Response File Entry to Acknowledge Compatibility Requirement	4
Response File Entries to Configure the Common Platform	5
Response File Entries to Configure the Industrial Graphic Server	с С
Response File Entries to Configure the License Server.	ז 7
Response File Entries to Configure the System Monitor	7
Response File Samples	8
Role-Based Response Files	9
Product-Based Response Files	C
Appendix B Single Product Installation 182	2
Guidelines for Creating a Compact Installation Source. 182	2
Upgrading from a Previous Version 183	3
Preparation for Installing a Single Product. 183	3
Optional Folder for Historian	5
Creating the Installation Source and Installing the Selected Component	5
Appendix C Ports Used by System Platform Products	7
System Platform Ports	7
Appendix D Common System Platform Processes	2
AVEVA System Platform Processes. 192	2
Appendix E User Accounts and Groups Created by System Platform Installation. 194	1
Application Server OS Groups and Accounts 194	4
InTouch HMI OS Groups and Accounts	5
InTouch Web Client OS Groups and Accounts 196	5



Historian Server OS Groups and Accounts.	196
Platform Common Services Accounts and OS Groups.	198
AVEVA License Manager OS Groups and Accounts.	199
System Monitor OS Groups and Accounts.	200
	204
Index	201



Chapter 1

Preparing for System Platform Installation

This guide describes how to install AVEVA[™] System Platform and System Platform Enterprise. System Platform Enterprise provides additional cloud-based capabilities and is supplied separately, on a different DVD. Unless otherwise noted, all information in this guide applies to both products.

You can use the System Platform installation program to install the entire suite of products, or any of the component products.

Before you begin the installation program, you need to prepare your system, and you should plan your installation according to the two installation types available to you, product-based and role-based. See <u>Selecting</u> <u>a Type of Installation</u> for additional information.

Your installation planning should also include selection of System Platform or System Platform Enterprise components. See <u>Selecting System Platform and System Platform Enterprise Components</u> for more information.

Make sure that your computer meets or exceeds the hardware and software requirements. System Platform 2023 is not supported on 32-bit operating systems or 32-bit versions of SQL Server. If the installed SQL Server version is not compatible for any reason, installation stops and an error message is displayed. For more information, see <u>Unsupported SQL Server Version Error Message</u>.

Important Notice for Highly Secured Environments (TLS 1.2 Exclusively)

Affected Systems

This information is applicable to a small subset of highly secured environments, in which operating systems and supporting networks have been configured to enable TLS 1.2 and where TLS 1.0 and 1.1 have been purposefully disabled. In these rare instances, some additional configuration is required to ensure that System Platform will work as expected.

System Platform 2023 includes various measures to strengthen security, including the ability to leverage the latest version of transport layer security (TLS 1.2), provided that TLS 1.2 has been enabled and configured in the host operating system.

As of the System Platform 2023 release date, Microsoft Windows Server 2016 does not support TLS 1.2 by default. You must enable it by applying Microsoft updates and several manual edits to the system registry. The tasks of applying all Microsoft updates and editing the system registry must be completed **before** you install



System Platform 2023. These instructions also apply to any other software products that support TLS 1.2. Follow the instructions listed below.

If you are required to enable TLS 1.2 and disable TLS 1.0 and TLS 1.1:

- 1. Before installing System Platform 2023 on a Windows Server 2016 computer, make sure that your computer is up to date by downloading and installing all applicable Microsoft updates.
- 2. If required by the updates, restart your computer.
- **3.** Edit the system registry. The .REG file shown below sets registry keys to their safest values. For additional information about these registry changes, see https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/dotnet/framework/network-programming/tls#configuring-security-via-the-windows-registry.

Windows Registry Editor Version 5.00

[HKEY_LOCAL_MACHINE\SOFTWARE\WOW6432Node\Microsoft\.NETFramework\v4.0.30319]

"SystemDefaultTlsVersions"=dword:0000001

"SchUseStrongCrypto"=dword:0000001

[HKEY_LOCAL_MACHINE\SOFTWARE\Microsoft\.NETFramework\v4.0.30319]

"SystemDefaultTlsVersions"=dword:0000001

"SchUseStrongCrypto"=dword:0000001

- 4. Restart your computer to ensure that all changes take effect.
- 5. Install System Platform 2023.

License Installation and Activation

A valid product license is required to enable product functionality. The AVEVA Enterprise License Server and Enterprise License Manager are automatically selected when you select Application Server or InTouch, or any role (see <u>About Role-Based Installation</u>) that includes the Application Server Galaxy Repository. In some cases, such as when you install a Runtime Client, the Galaxy Repository is installed "silently" (without any notice it is being installed).

While the Application Server Galaxy Repository is selected for installation, you cannot deselect the Enterprise License components. The License Server and License Manager are installed on the Galaxy Repository node by default.

Note: If you are using a workgroup, the License Manager and License Server must be installed on the same node.

You will need to configure the License Server and activate your product licenses before using the products you install. For detailed information about product licensing and activation, refer to the *AVEVA Enterprise Licensing Guide* (**AELicenseManagerGuide.pdf**). You can access it after installation is complete from the AVEVA Enterprise License Manager node, under the **AVEVA** start directory.

AVEVA Enterprise Licensing

The AVEVA Enterprise License Server acquires, stores, and serves licenses for all installed AVEVA software, including all System Platform products. The AVEVA Enterprise License Server and Manager work together to provide centralized management of all your product licenses.



For products and roles that do not install the License Server on the same node, you will have to provide the location (node name) of the License Server.

The basic product installation and license activation workflow is:

- 1. Install System Products, along with the AVEVA Enterprise License Server and License Manager. See Installing System Platform.
- 2. Configure the AVEVA Enterprise License Server (and Historian, if installed). See <u>AVEVA Enterprise License</u> <u>Server Configuration</u>.
- 3. Start the License Manager. The License Manager is browser-based, and is located in the AVEVA folder (Start > AVEVA > Enterprise License Manager). The License Manager uses the following URL: http://localhost/AELicenseManager

Note: If you are running the License Manager from a remote node (not the License Server/Galaxy Repository node), substitute the node name for **localhost**.

The License Manager opens in your browser.

4. If a License Server is displayed, click on it to select it. If no License Servers are displayed, click the **Add Server** button, and then enter the computer name of the License Server, or select the computer name from the drop down.

🕞 🛞 🏉 http://locall	host/AELicenseManager 🔎 = C 🧭 AVEVA Enterprise License M ×	- ロ × 命☆簡●
AVEVA	Enterprise License Manager	SystemPlatform\user11 💄
E Servers	+ Add Server	<u>م</u>
	4	Add Server
BL-U305		Computer Name: *
Running		LKF-35
0 Licenses		Display Name: *
		LKF-35
		Description:
		Primary License Server
		~ · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·
		Cancel Apply
<		

5. Refer to the AVEVA Enterprise Licensing Help for options and procedures to activate licenses.

Note: Changes to licensing, such as switching license servers or activating a new license, should not be done for a product that is already running. Depending on the product, it may take up to 30 minutes to acquire a new or changed license. To immediately acquire a license, restart the affected product. However, product interdependencies may require you to restart the node to force the immediate acquisition of the license.

AVEVA System Monitor Installation

The AVEVA System Monitor constantly checks the License Server to ensure that it is accessible. In the event that the software on a node is unable to acquire a license, the System Monitor sends a warning so you can quickly fix licensing acquisition issues to ensure that operations are not interrupted.

The AVEVA System Monitor consists of the following components:



- System Monitor Agent: The System Monitor Agent maintains the manifest of user-defined rules, handles monitoring of the machine to detect unhealthy conditions, and securely communicates with the System Monitor Manager to report those conditions. The System Monitor Agent is installed by the System Monitor Agent Install Manager on every System Platform node, including the System Monitor Manager node. The System Monitor Agent communicates with the System Monitor to monitor the license acquisition from the node to the license server.
- System Monitor Manager: The System Monitor is automatically selected for installation whenever the Galaxy Repository feature is selected. Note that you can use the Customize Installation option to deselect the System Monitor, and then select for installation on a different node. The System Monitor also has an SMTP server that can send email notifications if a process it is monitoring requires attention.

For each System Platform node, configuration of the System Monitor is required after installation. The System Monitor Agent on each System Platform node must be configured to point to the System Monitor node. The System Monitor node must be configured to point to itself (the System Monitor Manager Name is the node name). The System Monitor Manager node also requires configuration of its SMTP server and email addresses for notifications. See <u>Advanced System Monitor Configuration</u> for additional information.

In addition to the license monitoring functionality that the System Monitor provides by default, your System Platform licenses include the ability to configure System Monitor on a single node to monitor and manage the performance and availability of the core AVEVA software, the engineered software application(s), and the related hardware and network infrastructure. To configure this additional functionality, see the AVEVA System Monitor User Guide.

Important: If you have a System Monitor license and are running a full version of SQL Server (not Express), you can configure System Monitor Reports. This feature is only available for fully-licensed System Monitor installations, not basic mode, and is not available if you are running SQL Server Express. If your System Monitor installation will be fully licensed, the SQL Server Reporting Services (SSRS) server should be configured and the services started before initiating installation of the System Monitor Manager. This will enable deployment of System Monitor Reports. If SSRS is not configured before installation of the System Monitor Jer Guide for additional information.

Selecting System Platform and System Platform Enterprise Components

This guide describes how to install AVEVA[™] System Platform and System Platform Enterprise. System Platform Enterprise provides additional cloud-based capabilities and is installed from its own separate DVD. Unless otherwise noted, all information in this guide applies to both products.

The following tables list the System Platform and System Platform Enterprise components available for installation. Most components are common to both, while some widgets, apps, and other components are available for installation to only one.

AVEVA Application Server and OMI Components	System Platform	System Platform Enterprise
System Platform IDE	Yes	Yes
Application Server Galaxy Repository	Yes	Yes



Г

٦

AVEVA Application Server and OMI Components	System Platform	System Platform Enterprise
Application Server Platform (runtime)	Yes	Yes
Operations Management Interface (OMI) ViewApp (runtime)	Yes	Yes
OMI Web Server	No	Yes
OMI Workspaces	No	Yes
AVEVA OMI Apps	System Platform	System Platform Enterprise
OMI Content Presenter App	Yes	Yes
ОМІ Мар Арр	Yes	Yes
OMI Standard Apps (included with System Platform 2020 R2 SP1)	Yes	Yes
OMI Power BI App	No	Yes
OMI PI Vision App	No	Yes
OMI Sankey App	No	Yes
AVEVA OMI Widgets	System	System

AVEVA OMI Widgets	System Platform	System Platform Enterprise
Grid View Widget	Yes	Yes
Carousel Widget	Yes	Yes
QRCode Scanner Widget	Yes	Yes
Web Browser Widget	Yes	Yes
Teamwork Widget	Yes	Yes
OMI ScatterChart Widget	No	Yes
OMI Breadcrumb Widget	No	Yes
OMI Graphic Repeater Widget	No	Yes
OMI Hamburger Widget	No	Yes
OMI Map App Widget	No	Yes
OMI Navigation Tree Widget	No	Yes



AVEVA OMI Widgets	System Platform	System Platform Enterprise
OMI Title Bar Widget	No	Yes
AVEVA InTouch HMI and InTouch Access Anywhere Components	System Platform	System Platform Enterprise
InTouch WindowMaker	Yes	No
InTouch WindowViewer	Yes	No
InTouch Web Server (Web Client)	Yes	No
InTouch Workspaces	Yes	No
InTouch Access Anywhere Server	Yes	Yes
InTouch Access Anywhere Secure Gateway	Yes	Yes
AVEVA Historian	System Platform	System Platform Enterprise
Historian Server (Desktop/Server)	Yes	Yes
Historian Client Web (Insight Local)	Yes	Yes
Historian Client Desktop	Yes	Yes
Insight Publisher	Yes	Yes
AVEVA Common Services	System Platform	System Platform Enterprise
Communication Driver Pack	Yes	Yes
Common Services Framework	Yes	Yes
AVEVA Enterprise Licensing	Yes	Yes
System Monitor	Yes	Yes

Supported Operating Systems for System Platform 2023

Important! System Platform 2023 is supported on 64-bit operating systems only.

System Platform 2023 is supported on the following Windows client and server operating systems (64-bit only). This list was compiled at the release of System Platform 2023. Check the web site for the latest information.



Semi-Annual Channel Releases:

- Windows 10 20H1 SAC Professional, Enterprise, and IoT Enterprise
- Windows 10 20H2 SAC Professional, Enterprise, and IoT Enterprise
- Windows 11 20H1 SAC Professional, Enterprise, and IoT Enterprise
- Windows 11 20H2 SAC Professional, Enterprise, and IoT Enterprise

Long Term Service Channel Releases:

- Windows 10 LTSC Enterprise, IoT Enterprise 2019 (1809)
- Windows 10 LTSC Enterprise, IoT Enterprise 2021 (21H2)
- Windows 11 LTSC Professional, Enterprise, and IoT Enterprise
- Windows Server 2016 LTSC Standard and Datacenter
- Windows Server 2019 LTSC Datacenter, Essentials, Standard
- Windows Server IoT 2016 LTSC
- Windows Server IoT 2019 LTSC
- Windows Server 2022 LTSC Standard and Datacenter

Note: System Platform is no longer supported on any version of Windows 8.1, or Windows Server versions prior to 2016.

Supported InTouch Access Anywhere Clients

InTouch Access Anywhere has been tested in the following HTML5-capable browsers:

- Google Chrome version 98.0.4758.80 and newer
- Firefox version 96.03 ESR and newer
- Microsoft Edge Non-Chromium
- Microsoft Edge Chromium 97.0.1072.76 and newer
- Safari version 15.2 and newer (Mac and iOS only) (Not Windows)
- Opera version 83.0.4254.16 and newer

System Sizing Guidelines

The following table provides guidelines for hardware configurations suitable for System Platform 2023, based on application size. These guidelines are subject to the limitations of your Windows operating system, and if applicable, to the SQL Server edition (Express, Standard, or Enterprise). See the <u>Technology Matrix</u> on the AVEVA Global Customer Support website for supported versions of Windows operating systems and SQL Server.

- An HD display is recommended for engineering tools such as the System Platform IDE.
- A 64-bit operating system is required, regardless of system size.
- A Windows Server operating system is required for large installations.



- SQL Server Express is supported only for small systems, that is, installations with less than 25,000 I/O per node.
- Pagefile.sys, the Windows paging file (also called the swap file or virtual memory file), must be enabled. The Windows default setting is enabled.

Definitions

In the table below, hardware guidelines for different types of System Platform are listed. Definitions for the terminology used in the table are:

Level (Minimum and Recommended)

Minimum level describes the baseline hardware configuration that will provide at least minimally acceptable performance for the role. Recommended level describes an expanded hardware set that provides improved performance.

Application Server Node

Application Server nodes, also called IDE nodes, are engineering workstations. These are used for creating, editing, and deploying objects.

Galaxy Repository Node

Galaxy Repository nodes, also called GR nodes, host the galaxy database once it has been deployed from an Application Server node.

Historian Server Node

Historian Server nodes host the AVEVA Historian. At its core, the Historian is essentially a Microsoft SQL database server.

Thin Client

Thin clients include include smart phones and tablets. In the context of System Platform, thin clients are platforms for web browsers and remote desktop sessions (for example, InTouch Access Anywhere clients).

Client

In the context of System Platform, clients are computers that can be used for development applications, such as remote IDE workstations, as well as for run-time applications like WindowViewer, AVEVA OMI ViewApps, and Historian Insight.

The following guidelines are provided for reference only. The system configuration required for your application will depend on multiple factors, including but not limited to the size and complexity of the application, and the features and components used.

Application	Level	Logical Processors ¹	RAM ³	Free Disk Space ^{2, 3}	Network Speed
Application Server Nodes ⁵					
Small Application (1 - 25,000 I/O per Node)	Minimum	4	2 GB	100 GB	100 Mbps
	Recommended	8	4 GB	200 GB	1 Gbps
Medium Application (25,000- 50,000 I/O per Node)	Minimum	8	8 GB	200 GB	1 Gbps
	Recommended	16	12 GB	500 GB	1 Gbps
Large Application (> 50,000 I/O per Node)	Minimum	16	16 GB	500 GB	1 Gbps
	Recommended	32	24 GB	1 TB	Dual 1 Gbps



Application	Level	Logical Processors ¹	RAM ³	Free Disk Space ^{2, 3}	Network Speed	
Galaxy Repository Nodes						
Small Galaxy	Minimum	4	2 GB	100 GB	100 Mbps	
(1 - 50,000 I/O per Node)	Recommended	8	4 GB	200 GB	1 Gbps	
Medium Galaxy	Minimum	8	8 GB	200 GB	1 Gbps	
(50,000 - 200,000 I/O per Node)	Recommended	16	12 GB	500 GB	1 Gbps	
Large Galaxy	Minimum	16	16 GB	500 GB	1 Gbps	
(> 200,000 I/O per Node)	Recommended	32	24 GB	1 TB	Dual 1 Gbps	
Historian Server Nodes						
Small Historian	Minimum	4	2 GB	100 GB	100 Mbps	
(1 - 50,000 Historized Tags per Node)	Recommended	8	4 GB	200 GB	1 Gbps	
Medium Application	Minimum	8	8 GB	200 GB	1 Gbps	
Node)	Recommended	16	16 12 GB		1 Gbps	
Large Application	Minimum	16	16 GB	500 GB	1 Gbps	
(> 200,000 Historized Tags per Node)	Recommended	32	24 GB	1 TB	Dual 1 Gbps	
Thin Client Node						
RDP clients, InTouch Access Anywhere	Minimum	2	512 MB	N/A	100 Mbps	
browsers, mobile devices	Recommended	4	2 GB	N/A	100 Mbps	
Client Node						
WindowViewer, ViewApp, Historian	Minimum	4	1 GB	100 GB	100 Mbps	
Client, Remote IDE	Recommended	8 4 GB		200 GB	1 Gbps	
Remote Desktop Server Nodes						
Basic RDS, InTouch Access Anywhere	Minimum	8	8 GB	200 GB	1 Gbps	
Supports up to 15 concurrent remote sessions	Recommended	16	12 GB	500 GB	1 Gbps	
Large RDS, InTouch Access Anywhere	Minimum	16	16 GB	500 GB	1 Gbps	
Supports up to 30 concurrent remote sessions	Recommended	32	24 GB	1 TB	Dual 1 Gbps	
All-In-One Node ⁴ (all products on a sing	gle node)					
Small Application:	Minimum	8	8 GB	200 GB	100 Mbps	
1,000 I/O max	Recommended	12	12 GB	500 GB	1 Gbps	



Application	Level	Logical Processors ¹	RAM ³	Free Disk Space ^{2, 3}	Network Speed
Medium Application:	Minimum	12	16 GB	500 GB	1 Gpbs
20,000 I/O max	Recommended	16	32 GB	1 TB	1 Gbps
Large Application ⁶ 100,000 I/O max	Minimum	20	32 GB	2 TB	1Gbps
	Recommended	24	64 GB	4 TB	1 Gbps

1) To calculate the number of logical processors: multiply the number of physical cores by the number of threads each core can run. A four core CPU that runs two threads per core provides eight logical processors. The terms "Hyper-Threading and "simultaneous multithreading" (SMT) are also used to describe logical processors.

2) SSD drives are highly recommended.

3) In redundant environments, increase CPU and RAM to maintain a maximum of 40% typical resource utilization.

4) For optimal performance of all-in-one nodes, a high clock speed (>2.8 GHz) is recommended.

5) For Application Server platform nodes, it is recommended that you deploy no more than two AppEngines per logical processor (typically one primary AppEngine and one backup).

6) For large applications on all-in-one nodes, dual XEON processors are recommended.

Supported and Recommended Node Hardware Types

Product	Server Node	Thin Client- Server Node	Client Node	Thin Client	All-In-One	
Application Server						
Galaxy Repository	Preferred	Supported	Supported	No	Supported	
Application Engine	Preferred	Supported	Supported	No	Supported	
IDE	Preferred	Supported	Supported	RDP	Supported	
AVEVA OMI ViewApp Runtime	Supported	Supported	Preferred	ITAA/RDP	Supported	
InTouch Standalone						
WindowMaker (No Modern Apps)	Supported	Supported	Preferred	RDP	Supported	
WindowMaker (with Modern Apps)	Preferred	Supported	Supported	RDP	Supported	
WindowViewer / InTouch ViewApp (runtime only)	Supported	Supported	Preferred	ITAA/RDP	Supported	
InTouch for System Platform						
WindowMaker (with Managed Apps)	Preferred	Supported	Supported	RDP	Supported	
WindowViewer / InTouch ViewApp (runtime only)	Supported	Supported	Preferred	ITAA/RDP	Supported	
InTouch Access Anywhere						
InTouch Access Anywhere Server	Supported	Preferred	No	No	Supported	
InTouch Access Anywhere Client (HTML5 Browser)	Browser	Browser	Browser	Browser	Browser	



Product	Server Node	Thin Client- Server Node	Client Node	Thin Client	All-In-One		
InTouch Access Anywhere Secure Gateway	Supported	No	No	No	No		
Historian	Historian						
Historian Server	Preferred	Supported	Supported	No	Supported		
AVEVA Insight	Browser	Browser	Browser	Browser	Browser		
Historian Client	Supported	Supported	Preferred	RDP	Supported		
Support Components			-				
OI Gateway	Preferred	Supported	Supported	No	Supported		
AVEVA Enterprise License Server	Preferred	Supported	Supported	No	Supported		
AVEVA Enterprise License Manager	Preferred	Supported	Supported	No	Supported		
AVEVA Enterprise License Manager Client	Browser	Browser	Browser	Browser	Browser		

Required Installation Order of Additional Products

Some AVEVA products released prior to System Platform 2023 must be installed before you install System Platform. These are:

- Alarm Adviser (2014 R2 SP1 and prior versions)
- Intelligence (2017 SP1 and prior versions)
- Recipe Manager Plus (2017 Update 1 and prior versions)
- Skelta BPM (2017 R2 Update 1 and prior versions)

If any of the above products will be installed on the same system as System Platform 2023:

- 1. Install the product (Alarm Adviser, Intelligence, etc.) first.
- 2. Then, install System Platform 2023.

InBatch 2017 or prior versions must installed after installing System Platform 2023.

- 1. Install System Platform 2023.
- 2. Then, install InBatch.

Common Components

System Platform 2023 includes several shared modules that are needed for the products to operate. You will see some or all of the following common components listed under **Programs and Features** in the Windows **Control Panel** after installation is complete, depending on your installation selections for the node:



Component	Version	Required/ Optional
AVEVA Communication Drivers Pack 2023	7.4.0	Required
AVEVA Platform Common Services 7.0	7.022168.5	Required
AVEVA Help	1.0.0	Optional
AVEVA Enterprise License Manager	3.7.002	Required
AVEVA Enterprise License Server	3.7.002	Optional (see note)
AVEVA Enterprise Licensing Platform	3.7.002	Required
AVEVA Enterprise Licensing Platform (x86)	3.7.002	Required
Operations Control Logger	22.1.000	Required
Operations Control Management Console	22.1.000	Required
System Monitor Manager 1.4	1.4.0	Optional

Note: The License Server is required on nodes with the Galaxy Repository.

Windows Network Configuration

If you are installing System Platform products on more than one node, we recommend that you use domain based networking. Domain based (client-server) networks provide better user account security and management than workgroup based (peer to peer) networks.

System Platform does not support mixed Windows workgroup/domain environments. While workgroups are supported, you cannot use workgroup nodes within a domain environment.

Note: Do not install the Galaxy Repository on a computer that is used as a domain controller or an Active Directory server.

Operations that rely on inter-node communications may not function correctly in a workgroup based Application Server installation. Examples of this type operation include connecting to a remote IDE, or viewing the status of a remote platform.

If you must use workgroup based networking, you can avoid communications issues by enabling "everyone permissions" for anonymous users. To enable these permissions, go to: Local Security Policy > Local Policies > Security Options > Network Access: Let everyone permissions apply to anonymous.

Or, you can enter the following command from an administrator command prompt: reg add HKLM\System\CurrentControlSet\Control\Lsa /v EveryoneIncludesAnonymous /t REG_DWORD /d 0





System Platform Prerequisites

Operating System and SQL Server

A 64-bit Windows operating system is required for installing and running System Platform 2023 and its component products. Some System Platform 2023 components, such as the Application Server Galaxy Repository and the AVEVA Historian also require a 64-bit version of Microsoft SQL.

Check the <u>AVEVA GCS Technology Matrix</u> website for more information about supported Windows and SQL Server versions for the System Platform 2023 component products you are installing.

Note: If you are using silent (command line) installation, all prerequisites, including the .NET Framework and SQL Server, **must** be installed before launching the System Platform setup program. See <u>Using Silent Installation</u> for more information.

.NET Framework

- System Platform requires **Microsoft .NET® Framework 4.8**. Prior to any other installation task, System Platform checks if .NET Framework 4.8 is installed. If it is not, you are prompted to allow its installation. A system restart may be required when .NET installation is complete. If the System Platform installation program does not automatically resume after the system restart, you will need to restart it manually.
- If an error occurs during setup that stops the .NET Framework 4.8 installation, you can try manually installing from the System Platform installation DVD:

\InstallFiles\Redist\DOTNET\4.8\NDP48-x86-x64-AllOS-ENU.exe

To check installed .NET versions:

Open a command prompt and enter cmd /k reg query "HKLM\SOFTWARE\Microsoft\NET Framework Setup\NDP" /s /v Version

The installed versions of .NET are listed.

Prerequisites Automatically Installed by System Platform

The System Platform installation program analyzes the software installed on your computer and lists any software that is required but not currently installed, and any installed software that is incompatible. The following prerequisites are installed by the System Platform installation program, if not already present on the system:

- Microsoft .NET[®] Framework 4.8
- SQL Server: SQL Server is required for products or roles that you select for installation that include GR node or Historian Server. If a supported version of SQL Server is not found, you are given the option to install SQL Server 2019 Express Core (with Advanced Tools) as part of System Platform installation. However, SQL Server Express supports only small installations with less than 25,000 I/O per node.



o SQL Server default instance found	AVEVA
SQL Server is required for the product(s) you selected, but a supported version of SQL Server v one of the following options.	was not found. To proceed, select
 Install SQL Server Express and continue installation. 	
Exit installation and install a supported SQL Server version.	
SQL Server requirements.	
< <u>B</u> ack <u>N</u> et	xt > Exit

If you have a medium or large installation, a copy of **SQL Server 2019 Standard Edition** is supplied with System Platform. You must install it or another supported version of SQL Server separately, before you install System Platform. See the on the AVEVA Global Customer Support website for the current list of supported SQL Server versions.

If you do not want to install SQL Server, and you have product or role selections that include the GR node by default, you can select the **Customize Installation** checkbox and deselect the **Galaxy_Repository**. However, this will limit any database-related product functionality, such as the AVEVA System Platform IDE, that uses the Galaxy Repository.

See <u>SQL Server Requirements</u> for more information about the limitations of using SQL Server Express instead of a standard or enterprise edition.

The following tables summarize which System Platform products and roles require SQL Server.

Product Selections	SQL Required
Application Server	Yes
Application Server and AVEVA OMI Runtime	No
Application Server Development	No
Application Server Galaxy Repository	Yes
InTouch HMI	Yes
InTouch Development and Runtime	Yes
InTouch Runtime Only	No
InTouch Access Anywhere Server	No



Product Selections	SQL Required
InTouch Access Anywhere Secure Gateway	No
InTouch Access Anywhere Authentication Server	No
Historian	Yes
Historian Client	No
Licensing	No
Role Selections	SQL Required
Runtime Client	No
Remote System Platform Development Client	No
System Platform Development Server	Yes
Without Galaxy Repository (custom installation)	No
Historian Server Node	Yes
Historian Client Node	No
InTouch Access Anywhere Secure Gateway Node	No
All-In-One-Node	Yes
 Without Galaxy Repository and Historian Server (custom installation) 	No

Note: System Platform will allow you to install an InTouch development system without a Galaxy Repository. However, InTouch Modern Applications will not work without the Galaxy Repository.

While installing System Platform, if the logged-on user (the installer) is not a SQL Server administrator, the **SQL Access Configurator** opens (the dialog box is labeled "**aaConfig SQL**") and requests SQL Server administrator credentials. Enter valid SQL Server administrator credentials when requested. For more information about setting user privileges with the **SQL Access Configurator**, see <u>Setting the SQL Server Security Mode</u>. For more information about SQL Server installation, see <u>SQL Server Requirements for System Platform Components</u>.

The System Platform installation program installs both system-specific and product-specific prerequisites. It also checks for incompatible software that will prevent installation from proceeding, (for example, if InTouch Access Anywhere was previously installed). You do not have to exit from the System Platform installation program to install the prerequisite software, with the exception of standard or enterprise versions of SQL Server. You will need to exit and perform any uninstall operations that are indicated before continuing with installation.

For information on prerequisites and software requirements for the specific products, see the System Platform Readme, the Readme files of the specific products located in your documentation directory, or the specific product information chapter in this installation guide.

SQL Server Requirements for System Platform Components

SQL Server is required when any of the following System Platform components are selected for installation:



- Application Server Galaxy Repository (GR)
- Historian Server
- System Monitor Manager

The prerequisites installation workflow diverges if SQL Server is required but not already installed, and you will be prompted to install SQL Server during the installation. At this point, you have a choice of having System Platform install SQL Server Express Core automatically, or exiting System Platform installation and installing SQL Server before proceeding.

- If you are installing a small system (less than 25,000 I/O), you can allow System Platform to continue installing, and SQL Server Express Core will be installed during the System Platform installation process. You do not have to install SQL Server Express Core separately.
- If you cannot use SQL Server Express due to your system requirements, exit the installation program and install a supported SQL Server version. Resume System Platform installation after you have installed and configured the supported SQL Server version.

To see if one of the SQL Server-required components is selected for installation, click the **Customize Installation** checkbox and scroll through the product/component list. In some cases, you can deselect the SQL Serverdependent component, if you decide that the component is not needed for the product or role you are installing. For some roles and products, you will not be able to deselect the component and still have the functionality required for that particular role or product.

For more information about SQL Server prerequisites, see <u>SQL Server Requirements</u>.

Unsupported SQL Server Version Error Message

If an error message about an unsupported SQL Server version is displayed while installing System Platform, check the following:

- Your installed version of SQL Server is no longer supported, for example, SQL Server 2014.
 - How to fix: Upgrade SQL Server to a supported version. Refer to the following Microsoft resource for more information: Upgrade SQL Server. <u>https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/sql/database-engine/install-windows/upgrade-sql-server?view=sql-server-ver15</u>
- Your installed version of SQL Server is supported but requires a service pack. For example, you have SQL Server 2016 but Service Pack 3 is not installed.
 - How to Fix: Download and install the required Microsoft SQL Server service pack.
- You have a 32-bit version of SQL Server installed.
 - How to Fix: See "Install/Uninstall and Galaxy Migration Issues" in the System Platform Readme, and refer to Issue 1249251.

Selecting a Type of Installation

The System Platform installation program offers you a choice of two types of installation— product-based or role-based.



About Product-Based Installation

Product-based installation provides a combination of features not specific to a node. This is the preferred installation type for a stand-alone product installation.

If you are familiar with System Platform products and their associated components, you can opt for a productbased installation, and then choose the components that you need. For example if you need to install InTouch[®] with the default options, then select a product-based installation.

Important: Product-based installation includes an option to install the InTouch Access Anywhere Secure Gateway. The Secure Gateway can only be installed on a computer running a supported version of the Windows Server operating system (minimum: Windows Server 2016). To ensure security, no other System Platform components should be installed on the node.

In the table below, components that are selected by default when you select the corresponding product are indicated by the letters **R** (for required), and **O** (for optional). Required means that the component must remain selected to install the product. Optional means that you can deselect the component and retain the remaining product functionality. Products definitions (columns 2 through 9) are as follows:

- AS + GR: Application Server (with Galaxy Repository)
- AS no GR: Application Server (without Galaxy Repository)
- IT: InTouch (HMI)
- ITAA: InTouch Access Anywhere
- ITAA SG: InTouch Access Anywhere Secure Gateway
- ITAA AS: InTouch Access Anywhere Authentication Server
- HS: Historian Server
- HC: Historian Client

Product / Component	AS + GR	AS w/o GR	ІТ	ΙΤΑΑ	ITAA SG	ITAA AS	HS	нс
System Platform	R	R	R	R			R	
PCS Runtime	R	ο	R				0	
PCS Service Repository								
Application Server	R	R	R	R				
Bootstrap	о	ο	R					
• IDE	о	ο	о					
Galaxy Repository								
Insight Publisher			R	R				



Product / Component	AS + GR	AS w/o GR	IT	ΙΤΑΑ	ITAA SG	ITAA AS	HS	нс
InTouch HMI			R	R				
Runtime			о	R				
Development			R	R				
Alarm DB Logger			о	R				
Demo Apps			о	R				
Recipe Manager			о	R				
SQL Access			о	R				
• 16-PenTrend			R					
Symbol Factory			R					
 Industrial Graphics Server (InTouch Web Client) 								
OI Gateway								
InTouch Access Anywhere				R	R	R		
• ITAA Server								
ITAA Secure Gateway								
ITAA Authentication								
Historian							R	
Historian Server							R	
• IDAS							R	
Active Event							R	
Configuration Tools							R	
Historian Extensions								
Historian Client	R	R	R	R				R
Trend/Query Clients								
Microsoft Add-Ins								
Licensing	R	0	R	о				
License Manager	R	ο	R	о				
License Server								
Client Components	R	R	R	R				
Server Components	R	R	R	R				
OI Server Simulator	R	R	R	R				



Product / Component	AS + GR	AS w/o GR	ІТ	ΙΤΑΑ	ITAA SG	ITAA AS	HS	нс
System Monitor	R	R	R	R	о	о	R	R
System Monitor Manager	R							
System Monitor Agent								

R = Required

O = Optional

About Role-Based Installation

Role-based installation provides a combination of features specific to a node. If you are uncertain about the specific products or components you need, but you know what role your computer will play, you can opt for a role-based installation. For example, if your computer is a run-time node or a development node, you can select those roles in the role-based installation program. The System Platform installation program will install all components required for the roles that you have selected. It is recommended that you define the node you are installing and select the appropriate role before starting the installation program. During the installation, you can click a role to see its description, as described in <u>Installing System Platform</u>.

Important: Role-based installation includes an option to install an InTouch Access Anywhere Secure Gateway node. The Secure Gateway can only be installed on a computer running a supported version of the Windows Server operating system (minimum: Windows Server 2016). To ensure security, no other System Platform components should be installed on the node.

In the table below, components that are selected by default when you select the corresponding product are indicated by the letters **R** (for required), and **O** (for optional). Required means that the component must remain selected to install the product. Optional means that you can deselect the component and retain the remaining product functionality.

Note: In some cases, you can still deselect a product category to remove all components under it, even if components are marked as required. For example, if you are installing a System Platform Development Server, and will be using the AVEVA OMI run time only, you can deselect the InTouch HMI category to remove all the components listed under it, including components that are marked as required. As another example, if you are installing Security Server, it is possible to deselect the System Management Server, but the resulting installed product will not be a Security Server.

Products definitions (columns 2 through 9) are as follows:

- **RT Client:** Runtime Client. Install only the necessary components required to run a visualization client, Historian client, and Application Server server run-time components.
- **Dev Client:** Remote System Development Workstation. Install the components required for a remote engineering development workstation with only the required components to allow the node to connect to an existing development server; GR is not installed by default. It allows development and testing of InTouch and System Platform applications.
- **Dev Servr:** System Platform Development Server. Install the components required to host the development server, and develop and test InTouch and System Platform applications.



- **HS Node:** Historian Server Node. Install the necessary components to store historical data in a System Platform environment.
- **HC Node:** Historian Client Node. Install the components required to connect to an existing Historian Server and analyze the data.
- **ITAA SG:** InTouch Access Anywhere Secure Gateway Node. Install the components to access InTouch applications hosted on Terminal Servers by using HTML5 compatible web browsers. This component cannot be installed on a computer that has other System Platform components installed.
- Lic Srvr: License Server. Installs the components required to create a stand-alone license server that installed products on other nodes can access for their licenses.
- Sys Mtr: System Monitor Manager . Installs the System Monitor Manager and Agent components. The System Manager monitors the License Server. It also includes a single node license to monitor the health of the computer on which it is installed.

Note: The System Monitor Manager is automatically selected for installation whenever the Galaxy Repository component is selected. You use the "Customize Installation" dialog to deselect it. The System Monitor Agent automatically installs on all System Platform nodes. It cannot be deselected and is a required component.

Not Listed: The following roles are not defined in the table below:

• All-in-One Node: All products, except InTouch Anywhere, are installed on a single node.

Role	RT Client	Dev Client	Dev Servr	HS Node	HC Node	ITAA SG	Lic Srvr	Snt Mgr
System Platform	R	R	R	R	R			
PCS Runtime			R					
PCS Service Repository								
Application Server	R	R	R	о	о			
Bootstrap		R	R					
• IDE			о					
Galaxy Repository								
Insight Publisher	R	R	R					

• **Custom:** Allows you to customize the components that are installed. No components are selected by default; you must select any component that you want to install.



Role	RT Client	Dev Client	Dev Servr	HS Node	HC Node	ITAA SG	Lic Srvr	Snt Mgr
InTouch HMI	R	R	R	R				
Runtime	R	0	о	R				
Development	о	R	R	R				
Alarm DB Logger	о	0	о	R				
• Demo Apps	о	0	о	R				
Recipe Manager	R	0	о	R				
SQL Access		0	о					
• 16-PenTrend		R	R					
Symbol Factory								
 Industrial Graphics Server (InTouch Web Client) 								
InTouch Access Anywhere						R		
ITAA Server								
ITAA Secure Gateway								
ITAA Authentication								
Historian				R				
Historian Server				R				
• IDAS				R				
Active Event				R				
Configuration Tools				R				
Historian Extensions								
Historian Client	R	R	R	R	R			
 Trend/Query Clients 								
Microsoft Add-Ins								
Licensing	0	0	R		0		R	
License Manager	о	о	R					
License Server								



Role	RT Client	Dev Client	Dev Servr	HS Node	HC Node	ITAA SG	Lic Srvr	Snt Mgr
Operation Integration	R	R	R	R	R			
Client Components	R	R	R	R	R			
Server Components	R	R	R	R	R			
OI Server Simulator	R	R	R	R				
OI Gateway								
System Monitor	R	R	R	R	R	R	R	R
System Monitor Manager			R					R
System Monitor Agent								

R = Required

O = Optional

Network Account

The Network Account is a user name and password combination that enables inter-node communication between all System Platform computers. You must specify the same Network Account on every node when you install the System Platform components for the first time on computers that communicate with each other.

Wherever a Network Account is required, the System Platform Installation dialog box appears and you will need to provide a valid user name and password.

WARNING! The Network Account is a Windows operating system account located on the local computer or on a domain. Do not delete this account with operating system account management tools. If you do, System Platform software may stop functioning properly.

- If no other System Platform software is installed on the computer, you are prompted to create a new Network Account or specify an existing user account during the System Platform installation.
- If you use an existing account, it must have a permanent password that does not expire, and the password cannot be changed. By default, the local machine name is displayed. To use a domain user account, enter the short domain name. Do not use the fully qualified domain name (FQDN). For example, use "DomainName" and not "DomainName.com" or "DomainName.local."

Important: To enhance security, the Network Account is blocked from logging on to the Galaxy locally or through Remote Desktop Services by default. This is configured in the operating system user rights management.

About Network Account Privileges

When you install System Platform, you can choose to have the system automatically create the Network Account as a local account. The Network Account cannot be used to interactively log on to the computer.



If you specify a pre-existing user account as the Network, it is added to the group aaAdministrators. Any SQL Server privileges that Application Server requires are also added. See <u>SQL Server Rights Requirements</u> for more information.

Note: Members of the aaAdministrators group do not have system admin privileges.

See <u>Modifying the Network Account</u> if you need to change or recreate the Network Account.

System Platform Upgrade

If you are upgrading from an earlier version of System Platform, and the existing Network Account (called ArchestrA User in prior releases) is a system Administrator, you are prompted to either:

- Remove the Network Account from the Administrators group to enhance security.
- Keep the Network Account as a system Administrator. You may want to keep the Network Account as a system Administrator, if it is leveraged by other applications and needs elevated privileges.

See <u>Upgrading</u>, <u>Modifying</u>, and <u>Repairing System Platform</u> for more information.



Chapter 2

Installing System Platform

IMPORTANT! We strongly recommend that you log into Windows as a user with administrative privileges when launching setup.exe. Once all selected System Platform products are installed and configured, you can use a lower-privileged account to operate the system.

If you use a standard user account with temporary administrator credentials instead of an administrator account to run setup.exe, a registry flag associated with the temporary administrator account may remain after the system prompts for a mid-installation restart. This flag is used to notify the operating system that setup should resume the next time that particular user logs into the system. Since product installation may have already completed the next time the user logs in, the "modify" setup screen appears instead. If this occurs, simply cancel the modify setup screen. This scenario, if it occurs, will only happen once, since the registry flag will be cleared. This will not affect the products or their installation.

You can select a product-based or a role-based installation for your computer.

Note: Prerequisites are installed as part of product installation and not in a separate workflow.

Compatibility Alert

If AVEVA[™] Manufacturing Execution System or certain versions of AVEVA[™] Recipe Management are detected on the node, you will be prompted during installation to apply a patch to the products to ensure compatibility with System Platform 2023. The patch is required for:

- Manufacturing Execution System 6.2.0. Older versions must be updated to version 6.2 and then patched.
- Recipe Management 4.5.0 and 4.6.0. These two most recent versions must be patched. Versions prior to 4.5 are compatible with System Platform 2023 and do not require patching.

Workspace Feature Notification for the OMI and InTouch HMI Web Client

The AVEVA Historian search and elastic search features are installed to support the Workspace feature for the Operations Management Interface (OMI) and InTouch HMI Web Client. Workspace is available if you are using Flex licensing. Therefore, after installation, you may see AVEVA Historian listed as a Windows program, even if you did not install the Historian. Do not uninstall Historian. You can use the Modify workflow to restore the Historian search and elastic search features if you inadvertently uninstalled Historian.

To install System Platform

Note: Use these instructions to install System Platform Enterprise 2023 as well as System Platform 2023. System Platform Enterprise provides additional cloud-based capabilities and is supplied separately, on a different DVD.



1. Insert the DVD into your DVD-ROM drive. Navigate to the root directory of the DVD and run setup.exe. Depending on your computer's security settings, Windows User Access Control may ask for permission to run the installation program. Allow it to run, and the startup screen appears.

If your computer is configured to allow AutoRun, setup.exe may start immediately after inserting the DVD.

- If the operating system is not supported, you are blocked from continuing. A 64-bit operating system is required. For additional information about supported operating systems, see <u>Supported Operating</u> <u>Systems for System Platform 2023</u>.
- If the operating system is supported, basic installation requirements are checked. .NET Framework 4.8 is
 installed if it or a later version is not already present.

Note: You are prompted to restart your computer after the .NET Framework is installed. You may need to manually restart the setup program. If the .NET Framework does not install successfully, see <u>System Platform Prerequisites</u> for additional information.

2. You are prompted to manually confirm that your operating system is compatible with System Platform. Refer to the System Platform Readme (for a list of compatible operating systems, as of the System Platform 2023 release), or the Technology Matrix in the AVEVA Global Customer Support website (for an updated list of compatible operating systems, including newly-released Windows versions).

Note: This compatibility check helps to ensure that installation is not blocked for compatible Windows versions released after the System Platform release, under Microsoft's Long-Term Servicing Channel (LTSC) and Semi-Annual Channel (SAC).

lease confirm Operating System compatibility	AVEVA
The computer is running Microsoft Windows Server 2016 Standard Version 1607 (0	OS Build 14393.2273).
Confirm that the Operating System version, indicated above, is compatible with AVEVA with this installation.	A System Platform 2023 prior to continuing
Specific Operating System version requirements at the time of release are listed in the released Operating Systems is listed in the Technology Matrix on the Global Customer https://gcsresource.aveva.com/TechnologyMatrix.	Readme file. Compatibility with any subsequently Support website:
Click $\ensuremath{\textbf{Next}}$ to continue installation on this Operating System.	
View install guide	<u>N</u> ext > <u>C</u> ancel

- **3.** After some automatic configuration occurs, the select installation mode dialog box appears. Select one of the following options
 - Product Based Selection: For information about product-based installation, see <u>About Product-Based</u> <u>Installation</u>.

If you select the **Product Based Selection** option, the product based installation dialog box appears. Select the product(s) you want to install on the node.



If you are installing any of the InTouch Access Anywhere options available under Product-Based Installation, see <u>Installing InTouch Access Anywhere</u>.

AVEVA System Platform Computer Roles: For information bout role-based installation, see <u>About Role-Based Installation</u>.

If you select the **System Platform Computer Roles** option, the role based installation dialog box appears. Select the role(s) you want to install on the node.

You can select multiple products or roles. All the selected components will be installed together. If you are installing InTouch Access Anywhere Secure Gateway, it should be installed by itself, without any other System Platform components on the same node.

- 4. When you select the Galaxy Repository for installation, the following components are automatically selected for installation and cannot be deselected:
 - Platform Common Services Framework. The PCS Framework includes a System Management Server, used for establishing a trust relationship between machines. See <u>Common Platform</u> for additional information.
 - AVEVA Enterprise Licensing Framework. Every node should be configured to point to a single License Server. See <u>AVEVA Enterprise License Server Configuration</u> for additional information.
 - **AVEVA System Monitor**. Every node should be configured to point to a single System Monitor Manager. See <u>AVEVA System Monitor Configuration</u> for additional information.

Note: If you have multiple Galaxy Repository nodes, the **Configurator** lets you select which node(s) to use for the above components at the end of installation. See <u>Configuring System Platform Components</u> for more information.

5. After you have made your product or role selections and click Next, an important notification appears.

The notification screen describes important security-related changes in this release of System Platform related to third-party components that are installed to support System Platform. Components that are near or beyond their official support dates are not installed, unless you explicitly choose to install them. These changes have been implemented to improve System Platform security.



MPORTANT FUNCTIONAL CHANGE - PLEASE REA	D	AVEVA
IMPORTANT CHANGE TO INSTALLATION BEHAVIOR: With the release of System Platform 2020 R2 SP1, AVEVA no long other vendors. For the long term sustainability and security of your which are outside their published support life cycle and will not ne their vendors in the future.	er installs out-of-support red r system, AVEVA strongly reco ccessarily receive any further f	listributable libraries from Microsoft or mmends you not install these libraries, functional or security related fixes from
CONSIDERATIONS FOR EXISTING PROJECTS:		
If upgrading an existing project which includes custom-built exect that they may rely on these older libraries. Examples include but Toolkit (AOT), objects derived from the previously discontinued \$ (DLLs), and third-party custom built .NET controls.	utable components, added to are not limited to: Objects d Switch and \$FieldReference I	the system after installation, consider eveloped using the Application Object base templates, custom script libraries
AVEVA recommends you recompile these custom components usi and components should get upgrades from their vendor. If there that it is not possible to update them before the installation of Syste	ing the latest redistributable are custom built components em Platform 2023, you will ne	libraries. Third-party controls, libraries s in your solution, and in the rare case ed to do the following:
1. For a fresh installation, select the "Customize Installation" checkbu 2. Select "Out Of Support Redistributables (NOT RECOMMENDED)".	ox on the "Change Selection"	screen and click "Next".
This forces the installation of older libraries.		
SEE ALSO: System Platform Readme and Installation Guide for addit	tional information and recomr	mended actions.
By checking the box below, you acknowledge that you read the info install behavior on your system.	ormation above and understa	nd the impact of this change to default
Acknowledge new behavior		
View install quide	< Back Ne	xt > Cancel

- 6. Click **Next** to proceed. The verify selection dialog box appears.
 - To make changes to your selections or to install out-of-support components, select the **Customize Installation** check box. You can change your selections to:
 - Install the out-of-support components if you are migrating a project with custom-built executable components that leverage these components (NOT RECOMMENDED). See step 7 for additional information.
 - Select Communication Drivers as needed. See step 8 for additional information.
 - Install other components, such as the InTouch 16-Pen Trend Wizard supplementary component. See step 9 for additional InTouch information.
 - Remove components from a node in multi-node Application Server configurations, such as the IDE or Galaxy Repository.
 - To proceed with your selections without making any changes, click Next.
- 7. **Optional installation of out-of-support assemblies:** Security updates include the removal of certain assemblies from Microsoft and other third-parties that have reached their end-of-life and are now out of support. Installing these assemblies may increase your security risk. Some assemblies have been removed completely as they are no longer needed to support System Platform installation. Other assemblies and executables, listed in the following table, are still included with the installation media. You are given the option to install the following assemblies if needed to support custom-built objects that you may be migrating to the new system. Select the checkbox to install them.



	AVEVA System Platform	~	AVEVA System Platform	
	Out Of Support Redistributables (NOT RECOMMENDED)			
	✓ PCS - Runtime			
	V PCS - Service Repository			
	✓ Historian			
	✓ Historian Server			
	✓ IDAS			
	✓ Active Event			
	 Configuration Tools 			
	✓ Historian Extensions			
	Historian Client Web			
	 Historian Server Documentation 			
	PDF Documentation	~		
Destina	tion Folder			
CA Dawner	Film (+06)			

Important: Do not install these components unless absolutely required. Instead, AVEVA recommends that you recompile any custom components using the latest redistributable libraries, and/or contact vendor for up-to-date versions.

Redistributable Description	Folder/Assembly Name
Microsoft SQL Server 2012 Management Objects SP2 (11.2.5058.0)	SQL2012SP2FeaturePack\ SharedManagementObjects.msi (x64 and x86 versions) SQL2012SP2FeaturePack\ SQLSysClrTypes.msi (x64 and x86 versions)
Microsoft Visual C++ 2008 Redistributable	VC90SP1/vcredist_x86.exe
Microsoft Visual C++ 2010 Redistributable	VC10SP1/vcredist_x64.exe VC10SP1/vcredist_x86.exe

Note: You can locate these assemblies on the installation DVD under the **InstallFiles\OutOfSupportRedist** folder. If you select the option to install them now, they will be automatically installed during the installation process.

Important: Installation of out-of-support assemblies is NOT recommended.

Instead of installing the out-of-support assemblies, we recommend that you use currently-supported software versions to rebuild any custom ApplicationObjects or applications. You may elect to install these out-of-support components if you will be migrating a project that contains:

- Custom ApplicationObjects built with the Application Object Toolkit
- Remote Response Objects
- The discontinued ApplicationObjects \$FieldReference or \$Switch


- Custom script libraries or custom .NET controls built with these out-of-support components
- Any other component that leverages the out-of-support assemblies

Note: If you do not install the out-of-support assemblies and import objects that have dependencies on them, you may see errors from the aaPim and WWPackageServer components while importing the objects.

8. Optional installation of AVEVA Communication Drivers: When you select Application Server or InTouch HMI for installation, the AVEVA Communication Drivers Pack Simulator (SIM) and Gateway are also selected for installation. Select Customize Installation and then scroll down to add any other drivers that you need.



- 9. If you have selected any **InTouch HMI** features, the language selection dialog box appears. Select the language for your InTouch HMI installation. The InTouch language versions are supported only for the matching operating system language. For example, the German version of the InTouch HMI is only supported on the German operating system. InTouch HMI language options are:
 - English
 - French
 - German
 - Japanese
 - Simplified Chinese
- 10. Click Next. The End User License Agreement dialog box appears.
- 11. Review the license. Click I have read and accept the terms of the license agreement(s), and then click Agree.
- 12. If the products or roles you selected require it, the **Off Node Communications** (Network Account) dialog box appears.

Note: If a Network Account for off-node communications is NOT required (for example, if you are only installing Historian Client), you will be prompted to click **Install**. If this is the case, skip to step 18.



Please enter a user name and a p communications.	AVEVA	
Domain/Local Machine	S. (20) S. (20)	×
<u>U</u> ser Name	aaUser	
Password	****	
C <u>o</u> nfirm Password	****	
	Create Local Account	
<u>V</u> iew install guide	< <u>B</u> ack <u>N</u> ext >	Cancel

- **13.** Specify a new or pre-existing Network Account for off-node communications. This account is used for encrypted communication between different System Platform nodes and software components. See <u>Network Account</u> for more information.
 - To select an existing account, clear the **Create Local Account** check box. When you clear the check box, the **Domain/Local Machine** text box displays the default domain name. Specify a different domain/local machine name if necessary. Then, enter the user name and password for the existing Network Account. Click **Next** to complete the Network Account setup.
 - To create a new account, click the **Create Local Account** check box if not already selected. By default, the **Domain/Local Machine** box displays your computer name. Then, enter a user name and password.
 - Network Accounts must meet the following requirements:
 - The account must have a permanent password that does not expire.
 - The account must have a password that cannot be changed.

Note: If necessary, you can change the Network Account credentials through the **Change Network Account** utility. The Start Menu includes a shortcut to the utility. It is listed under the **AVEVA** folder.

- 14. If the products or roles you selected require Microsoft SQL Server, and a supported version of SQL Server is not already installed, you will be prompted to select either:
 - Install SQL Server Express and continue installation. If you select this option, SQL Server Express is installed and then System Platform installation proceeds automatically.

Caution: If you select SQL Server Express, System Platform will automatically grant you (the logged in user) SQL sysadmin privileges. This level of access is required to proceed with SQL Server Express installation. You will retain sysadmin privileges even after installation. If you need to remove sysadmin privileges from the logged in account, be sure to create a sysadmin account first.

• Exit installation and install a supported SQL Server version. If you select this option, the System Platform installer exits. Manually install SQL Server, and then restart the System Platform installer.



System Platform for medium and large installations includes a separate DVD with a full version of SQL Server 2019 Standard. However, you can install any supported version of SQL Server. See the AVEVA Global Customer Support (GCS) for a list of supported SQL Server versions.

15. A list of missing prerequisite components (if any) and the System Platform products to be installed are displayed.

Note: Any prerequisites required for the products selected for installation will be listed above the list of products and components. The prerequisites will be installed first, and the product and components will be installed immediately after installation of the prerequisites has finished. If you elected to install SQL Server Express, it will be installed along with any other prerequisites.

Click **Install** to proceed. The progress bar appears.



16. After the installation is over, the installation completed dialog box appears.

AVEVA System Platform 2023 Installation	
	Installation completed. Some products require configuration prior to use. Click Configure to continue to the configuration utility.
AVEVA	
	View Readme





- Select **View Readme** for important information, including hardware and software requirements, new features, and known and resolved issues.
- Select **Configure** to continue. See <u>Configuring System Platform Components</u> for the final steps to complete installation.

Installing InTouch Access Anywhere

InTouch Access Anywhere does not allow you to remotely install it. Therefore, you must run the installation program locally for each instance.

Three InTouch Access Anywhere installation options are available from the System Platform product-based installation menu. These can be installed separately or together.

- Install InTouch Access Anywhere Server
- <u>Secure Gateway Installation</u>
- Install the Secure Gateway and Authentication Server Separately or Together

See the following documents for for additional information, including configuration steps that should be performed prior to installation. These documents are located on the System Platform Installation DVD under InstallFiles\CD-Intouch\UserDocs.

- InTouch Access Anywhere Secure Gateway Administrator Manual (file name: ITAA_Server_AdminManual.pdf)
- InTouch Access Server Administrator Manual (file name: ITAA_Gateway_AdminManual.pdf)

Before installing the InTouch Access Anywhere server, verify the following requirements have been met:

• The computer that will host the InTouch Access Anywhere server must be running a compatible 64-bit version of Windows Server. See <u>Supported Operating Systems for System Platform 2023</u> for details.

Note: Embedded operating systems are not supported by InTouch Access Anywhere Server.

- .NET Framework 4.8 or later must be installed on the computer that will host the InTouch Access Anywhere server. You can allow the setup program to install it automatically if it is not present. See <u>System Platform</u> <u>Prerequisites</u> for detailed information.
- InTouch applications must be built with version 10.6 or later to be viewed through InTouch Access Anywhere
- The InTouch Access Anywhere server must be installed on the same computer that hosts InTouch WindowViewer.
- Remote Desktop Services (RDS) must be configured on the host computer.

Important: InTouch Access Anywhere leverages RDP and translates RDP to WebSockets. RDS access must be enabled on the computer hosting InTouch Access Anywhere.

- Make sure the anticipated users of InTouch Access Anywhere are members of the Remote Desktop Users group to be granted the right to log on to the Access Anywhere server remotely.
- The host computer's firewall is configured to permit inbound and outbound network traffic on port 8080.

Make sure no other application installed on the InTouch Access Anywhere server also uses port 8080.

• The corresponding RDS Concurrent license is activated on the host computer.



- If upgrading to a newer version of InTouch Access Anywhere, first back up any custom components of the existing installation, then uninstall the existing version before installing the new version.
- InTouch Access Anywhere Server cannot be installed on computers in which the host name contains non-English characters.
- InTouch applications cannot be listed by InTouch Access Anywhere if application names or folder paths contain an ampersand (&) character.

Install InTouch Access Anywhere Server

A basic installation of the InTouch Access Anywhere Server usually takes about five minutes. When you select the InTouch Access Anywhere Server, several InTouch run-time and complementary components are auto-selected. These are required for installation with the InTouch Access Anywhere Server, and include:

- Insight Publisher
- InTouch Runtime
- InTouch Alarm DB Logger (Alarm Logger and Purge Archive components)
- InTouch Supplementary Components (Recipe Manager, SQL Access, and Symbol Factory)
- InTouch Web Client

Make sure that all installation prerequisites have been met before starting the installation procedure. The following procedure explains the basic steps to install the InTouch Access Anywhere Server on a computer running a supported version of Windows Server.

Before placing InTouch Access Anywhere into a secure, production environment, you may want to do some internal testing. <u>Install All Components on a Single Server</u> describes an alternative installation method to place the InTouch Access Anywhere Server, the Secure Gateway, and the Authentication Server on a single server computer.

To install InTouch Access Anywhere Server

- 1. Log on as a Windows administrator on the computer where you are installing InTouch Access Anywhere Server.
- 2. Insert the System Platform DVD in your computer and run setup.exe.
- 3. Select Product-Based Selection.
- 4. Select InTouch Access Anywhere Server. You will see the additional components auto-selected. Click Next to continue.



t the option(s) you would like to install.	AVEV
Hect the product(s) to be Installed AVEVA Application Server PDF Documents AVEVA InTouch HMI AVEVA InTouch HMI Development and Runtime AVEVA InTouch Access Anywhere AVEVA InTouch Access Anywhere and Runtime AVEVA InTouch Access Anywhere Gateway AVEVA InTouch Access Anywhere Authentication Server AVEVA Intoroch Client Trend/Query Clients Microsoft Office (32-Bit) Add-ins PDF Documents AVEVA Communication Drivers Pack System Monitor Manager AVEVA Enterprise Licensing Platform AVEVA Enterprise License Manager	Installs the components required to provide remote access to InTouch HMI and AVEVA OMI
View install guide < Back	Next > Cancel

- 5. Click Next on the dialog box that shows the components to be installed.
- 6. Select the check box that acknowledges you have read and accepted the terms of the license agreement and select Agree.
- 7. Click Install to begin installing InTouch Access Anywhere and InTouch Runtime.
- 8. A horizontal bar shows the progress of the installation.
- 9. Click Finish to complete the installation.
- **10.** Configure (or disable) the Windows Firewall for use with InTouch Access Anywhere. For details, see "Configuring a Firewall Program Exception" in the *InTouch Access Server Administrator Manual*.

Secure Gateway Installation

This section describes the procedure to install the Secure Gateway on a computer running a supported version of Windows server. The Secure Gateway supports other installation configurations. For more information, see "Other Secure Gateway Installation Configurations" in the *InTouch Access Anywhere Secure Gateway Administrator Manual*.

After verifying all installation prerequisites, start the installation procedure.

Note: Secure Gateway cannot be upgraded by installing a newer version on a computer hosting an existing version. The existing version of Secure Gateway must be uninstalled first before attempting to install another version on the same computer. To uninstall Secure Gateway, see <u>Uninstall a System Platform Component</u>.

To install InTouch Access Anywhere Secure Gateway

- 1. Insert the System Platform DVD in your computer and run setup.exe.
- 2. Select Product-Based Selection.
- 3. Select InTouch Access Anywhere Secure Gateway, then click Next.



AVEVA Application server PDF Documents AVEVA InTouch HMI AVEVA InTouch HMI Development and Runtime AVEVA InTouch HMI Runtime Only	The InTouch Access Anywhere Secure Gatewa Node lets you access AVEVA InTouch HMI applications hosted on Terminal Servers via HTMLs compatible web horacrast it is used it
AVEVA InTouch Access Anywhere and Runtime AVEVA InTouch Access Anywhere and Runtime AVEVA InTouch Access Anywhere Secure Gateway AVEVA InTouch Access Anywhere Authentication Server AVEVA Historian AVEVA Historian	combination with the InTouch Access Anywhe Server. No other System Platform component should be installed on a computer with this option.
Trend/Query Clients Microsoft Office (32-Bit) Add-ins DDE Documents AVEVA. Computing and private Pack	
System Monitor Manager	
AVEVA Enterprise Licensing Platform	~

4. A checkbox appears that lets you customize installation. Select this if you wish to change the default installation folder.

Otherwise, the Secure Gateway is installed to the default installation folder, C:\Program Files (x86).

5. Accept the license agreement by selecting the I have read and accept the terms of the license agreement option, and then click Agree.

The Ready to Install the Application screen appears.

- 6. Review the installation details and click Install.
- 7. Click Finish after the installer indicates that the Installation has completed successfully.

Configuring Ports for the InTouch Access Anywhere Secure Gateway

The InTouch Access Anywhere Secure Gateway uses several ports for communication. The following ports are used and must be configured on the computer hosting the Secure Gateway if a conflict exists:

- Port 443 (default): This is a dedicated port between the Secure Gateway Server and the external network. Check for port conflicts, and change port numbers if necessary. This is a common port that is also used by:
 - Microsoft Internet Information Services (IIS).
 - Remote Desktop, if Remote Desktop itself is enabled.
 - System Management Server, if a System Platform product (Application Server, InTouch HMI, Historian, etc.) is installed on the same computer as the Secure Gateway Server.
- Port 8080: A port between the Secure Gateway Server and the InTouch Access Anywhere Server. The default port number is 8080, and can be changed.
- Port 80: The Secure Gateway includes an HTTP proxy that listens on port 80 by default. The port can be disabled after installing the Secure Gateway.



Resolving Secure Gateway Port Conflicts

A complete list of ports used by System Platform products and components is provided in an Appendix to this document: <u>Ports Used by System Platform Products</u>. Refer to that list when modifying default port settings to ensure that you are not creating a new conflict.

The System Management Server is a required component for running System Platform products. By default, it uses port 443, the same as the Secure Gateway default. Therefore, a conflict results if you are installing any other System Platform component products on the same node as the Secure Gateway. You must change the port number for either the System Management Server or the Secure Gateway. If you change the System Management Server port, you must also change the port number for the System Monitor. In addition, other System Platform nodes must be configured to use the same System Management Server port.

- Port assignments for both the System Management Server and the System Monitor can be changed during System Platform configuration, immediately following installation. See <u>Common Platform</u> and <u>AVEVA System</u> <u>Monitor Configuration</u> for more information about changing the port numbers for these components.
- To change the port number for the InTouch Access Anywhere Secure Gateway:
 - a. Locate the Secure Gateway configuration file, EricomSecureGateway.Config and open it for editing. The default file location is:
 C:\Program Files (x86)\Wonderware\InTouch Access Anywhere Secure Gateway\InTouch Access Anywhere Secure Gateway
 - b. Change the value for the SecuredPort to a different, unused port number. The Secure Gateway does not permit port sharing.
 - c. Save the file.
- Refer to the *InTouch Access Anywhere Secure Gateway Administrator Guide*, located in the AVEVA Documentation folder for additional information.
- If Microsoft IIS is running on the same server that will host the Secure Gateway, either change the IIS ports to values other than 80 and 443, or change the Secure Gateway port to a value other than 443 and disable the HTTP auto redirect feature after the installation. If there is a port conflict on either the HTTP or HTTPS port, the Secure Gateway does not operate properly.

Install the Secure Gateway and Authentication Server Separately or Together

The Authentication Server provides an additional layer of security by authenticating end-users before they can contact the Access Anywhere server. When the Authentication Server is enabled, only domain users will be able to authenticate. Local system users (such as Administrator) will not be able to logon through the Authentication Server. The Authentication server is an optional InTouch Access Anywhere component and is disabled by default.

The Secure Gateway and Authentication servers can be installed separately or together on one of the supported Windows Server operating systems. See <u>Supported Operating Systems for System Platform 2023</u> for details.

- The Authentication Server must be installed on a computer that is a member of the domain that it will use to authenticate users.
- The Authentication server can only be configured for one domain at a time.
- The Authentication server should be installed on the safe side of a firewall rather than the DMZ for best security practice.



To install the Secure Gateway and Authentication server on the same or separate computers

- 1. Log on as a Windows administrator of the computer that will host either the Secure Gateway, the Authentication server, or both.
- 2. Insert the System Platform DVD in your computer and run setup.exe.
- 3. Select Product-Based Selection.
- 4. Determine how you want to install the Secure Gateway and the Authentication server.

Install the Secure Gateway and the Authentication server on separate computers

- Install the Secure Gateway by following the steps described in <u>Secure Gateway Installation</u>. The Authentication server must be configured by setting options from the Secure Gateway Configuration portal.
- Install the Authentication server on another computer that meets the requirements listed above this procedure.

Install the Secure Gateway and the Authentication server together on the same computer

• Select the Secure Gateway and Authentication server options from the installation dialog box and following the installation instructions.

lect the product(s) to be Installed		
AVEVA Application Server PDF Documents AVEVA InTouch HMI AVEVA InTouch HMI Development and Runtime AVEVA InTouch HMI Runtime Only AVEVA InTouch Access Anywhere AVEVA InTouch Access Anywhere and Runtime AVEVA InTouch Access Anywhere Secure Gateway AVEVA InTouch Access Anywhere Authentication Server AVEVA Historian AVEVA Historian Client Trend/Query Clients Microsoft Office (32-Bit) Add-ins PDF Documents AVEVA Communication Drivers Pack System Monitor Manager AVEVA Enterprise Licensing Platform AVEVA Enterprise License Manager	~	InTouch Access Anywhere Authentication server is used to perform authentication services for Secure Gateway products.

5. After installing the Authentication server and the Secure Gateway, see the section, Built-In Authentication Server, in the InTouch Access Anywhere Secure Gateway Administrator Manual for descriptions of the options to configure the Secure Gateway to work with an Authentication server.

Install All Components on a Single Server

All InTouch Access Anywhere server components can be installed on a single computer running a supported version of Windows server. The Secure Gateway, the Authentication server, and the InTouch Access Anywhere server can be installed simultaneously.



To install all InTouch Access Anywhere Components on a single server

- 1. Log on as a Windows administrator on the computer where you are installing InTouch Access Anywhere.
- 2. Insert the System Platform DVD in your computer and run setup.exe.
- 3. Select **Product-Based Selection** and select the checkbox for each of the three InTouch Access Anywhere installation options:
 - Install InTouch Access Anywhere Server
 - Secure Gateway Installation
 - Install the Secure Gateway and Authentication Server Separately or Together

elect the product(s) to be installed	
AVEVA Application Server PDF Documents AVEVA InTouch HMI AVEVA InTouch HMI Puntime Only AVEVA InTouch Access Anywhere AVEVA InTouch Access Anywhere AVEVA InTouch Access Anywhere Secure Gateway AVEVA InTouch Access Anywhere Authentication Server AVEVA InTouch Access Anywhere Secure Gateway AVEVA InTouch Access Anywhere Authentication Server AVEVA Historian AVEVA Historian Client Trend/Query Clients Microsoft Office (32-Bit) Add-ins PDF Documents AVEVA Communication Drivers Pack System Monitor Manager AVEVA Enterprise License Manager	 InTouch Access Anywhere provides remote access to InTouch HMI and AVEVA OMI applications via a web browser.

- 4. Click Next on the dialog box that shows all components have been selected to be installed.
- 5. Select the check box that acknowledges you have read and accepted the terms of the license agreement and select **Agree**.
- 6. Click Install to begin installing the InTouch Access Anywhere components.

A horizontal bar shows the progress of the installation.

7. Click **Finish** to complete the installation.



Chapter 3

Configuring System Platform Components

Using the Configurator

You need to configure System Platform using the **Configurator** dialog box after installation. You can re-run the **Configurator** as required to make changes to any of the settings for the installed components. The **Configurator** dialog box lists all product components that require post-installation configuration. You can configure the locations for the product database and the data files.

You must have administrative rights to use the **Configurator**.

The following System Platform components may require configuration after installation and after making certain changes to an existing system installation:

- System Management Server
- Industrial Graphic Server
- AVEVA Historian
- AVEVA License Server
- AVEVA System Monitor

To start the Configurator

- Click **Configure** on the final installation dialog box. The **Configurator** dialog box appears. The product feature tree expands by default. Most features will show as *Not Configured* the first time you open the Configurator.
- You can also start the Configurator at any time from the Windows Start menu.





The status of each item in the **Configurator** is displayed when the Configuration opens and as items are configured. The status indicators are:

- Error 😣 Indicates that an error occurred during configuration.
- Not Configured **1** Indicates that the feature is installed, but not configured.
- Warning A Indicates that configuration is complete, but with warnings.
- Configured 🕑 Indicates that configuration completed successfully.
- Not Installed 🗵 Indicates that the feature is not installed.
- Non Configurable 🛛 Indicates there is nothing to be configured.

Common Platform

Common Platform services include the **System Management Server (SMS)**. The SMS is used to implement important security measures for System Platform 2023. These include:

- Setting the System Platform installation type and license mode. See <u>License Mode Configuration</u> for more information.
- Setting port numbers for inter-node communications: See <u>Ports Tab</u> for more information.
- Setting the SuiteLink security mode and user access to the AVEVA Network Message Exchange.



- Communication over a SuiteLink connection can be configured to use only encrypted (secure) communications, or to allow unencrypted communications, if a secure (TLS) connection cannot be established. SuiteLink is used for a number of different applications in System Platform.
- The AVEVA Network Message Exchange (NMX) is an application communication protocol that leverages a DCOM-based transport mechanism for communication between nodes.

For information about configuring SuiteLink security and NMX access, select the Advanced Configuration button and go to the <u>Communications Tab</u>.

- Certificate management: See <u>Certificates Tab</u> for more information.
- User authentication via the OpenID connect standard, which allows single sign on (SSO) via an external identity provider. See <u>Authentication Provider Configuration</u> for more information.

To enable security, every System Platform node must communicate with the System Management Server. There should only be one System Management Server in your System Platform topology, otherwise, communication disruptions may occur. The System Management Server stores shared security certificates and establishes a trust relationship between machines. You can configure one additional node as a redundant SSO server, which functions as a backup for single sign-on if the System Management Server cannot be reached.

If some nodes have not been upgraded to System Platform 2017 Update 3 or later, communication with those older nodes may need to utilize unsecure communication. However, communication between nodes running System Platform 2017 Update 3 or later will be encrypted, as long as the nodes are configured to communication with the System Management Server.

For more information about configuring the System Management Server with an authentication provider, see <u>Designing a Robust SSO System with an External Authentication Provider</u>.

System Management Server Configuration

The System Management Server will be in a warning state initially, rather than an unconfigured state as other items in the Configurator are shown.

To configure the System Management Server

1. In the Configurator, select System Management Server under Common Platform in the left pane.

Note: If you are prompted for user credentials for the System Management Server, use the following format to enter the user name: **DomainName\UserName**. The prompt for user credentials may be displayed if you have domain admin privileges but are not an admin on the local machine. You must be a member of the **Administrators** or **aaAdministrators** OS group to configure the System Management Server. For more information, see User Credentials for Configuring the System Management Server.



Configurator	- 🗆 x		
Eile Help			
 Common Platform System Management Server Authentication Provider License Mode Industrial Graphics Server Client Settings Authentication Settings AVEVA Historian 	Machines running AVEVA software must be configured to trust each other so that encrypted communications can be utilized. This is done by connecting them to a System Management Server. Connect to an existing System Management Server. This machine is the System Management Server. There should only be one System Management Server. All other machines should be configured to connect to this System Management Server.		
 Server Security Search Reporting AVEVA Enterprise Licensing Platforr AVEVA Enterprise License Se AVEVA System Monitor System Monitor Manager Alert Email Server 	When configuring other machines, you should validate that the security code shown in the Configurator matches: Details 95 4E 07 08 89 52 86 14 0C 13 60 83 DB 47 1E 16 47 F5 70 58 Solution O No System Management Server configured. (NOT RECOMMENDED) This option also allows you to remove any existing certificates that were managed by the System Management Server. You can connect to an existing System Management Server or configure a new System Management Server by selecting one of the first two options, respectively. When you click Configure, a certificate and the web ports to use for communication are configured. To modify these configurations, click Advanced.		
C (((((((((((((((((((Advanced		
Refresh All Mes	configure Close		

You can connect to an existing System Management Server (SMS), make this node the SMS, or proceed without configuring an SMS (not recommended).

• **Connect to an existing System Management Server** (default): The System Platform discovery service looks for an existing System Management Server (SMS) on the network. If any are found, they are displayed in a drop down list. Select the server you want to use, or enter the machine name of the server. All computers in your System Platform topology should connect to the same server.

The machine name must comply with Active Directory naming conventions. Windows does not permit computer names that exceed 15 characters, and you cannot specify a DNS host name that differs from the NETBIOS host name. The maximum length of the host name and of the fully qualified domain name (FQDN) is 63 bytes per label and 255 bytes per FQDN. For more information, refer to the following Microsoft information page that provides Active Directory naming conventions and name/character limitations:

https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/troubleshoot/windows-server/identity/naming-conventions-forcomputer-domain-site-ou

• **Configure this machine as a redundant SSO Server.** If you configure the node to connect to an existing SMS, you can configure the node as a redundant SSO (single sign-on) Server. See <u>Redundant SSO</u> <u>Configuration</u> for additional information.



- This machine is the System Management Server: Select this option if this computer will be the System Management Server. Make sure that you are configuring only one System for your entire system. All other computers in your System Platform topology should be configured to connect to this server by using the **Connect to an existing System Management Server** option. A security code is shown when you configure this option. When you configure other nodes using the "Connect to an existing System Management Server" option. A security code is shown when you configure this option. When you configure other nodes using the "Connect to an existing System Management Server" option, verify that the codes match. You can view the certificate by clicking the **Details...** button.
- No System Management Server configured. (NOT RECOMMENDED): Select this option to set up your computer without encryption and secure communications. When no System Management Server is configured, an option that allows SuiteLink connections to use unencrypted communications is automatically enabled.

Even if you do not configure an SMS for this node, you can still configure a System Management Server for other computers in the topology to use. You can also use this option to remove any previously installed certificates that were managed by the System Management Server.

- Select the Advanced button for additional configuration options. These include setting port numbers, adding a security certificate, and setting the SuiteLink communication mode. See <u>Advanced Configuration Options</u> for details.
- 3. Press the **Configure** button.

• If you are connecting to an existing System Management Server, the Security Warning window is displayed:



Warning	x
You are about to establish trust with remote computer	
We could not automatically verify the identity of the remote computer, so it may be unsafe to proceed.	
You should verify that the security code shown in the configurator on computer " " matches the code shown below. For additional information about the remote computer, press the Details button.	
Security Code: Details	
60 8E 3D 58 F6 FF 2F D6 28 7F B3 90 AC 81 CC 91 F2 0C EA CF	
Warning: If you trust remote computer, Windows will trust any other computer that also trusts """". If you click the Yes button, you acknowledge this risk.	
Do you want to proceed with trusting the remote computer?	
<u>Y</u> es <u>N</u> o	

By establishing trust between machines, communications can pass freely. This will be a security concern if you are not sure of the identity of the remote computer. If you have any doubt about the computer you are connecting to, verify the security code and certificate details by selecting the **Details...** button in the Advanced Configuration dialog to open the certificate.

Certificate	×
General Details Certification Path	
Certificate Information This certificate is intended for the following purpose(s):	_
 Ensures the identity of a remote computer Proves your identity to a remote computer All issuance policies 	
Issued to: SP-BL02 ASB Root CA	_
Valid from 4/30/2022 to 4/25/2042 You have a private key that corresponds to this certificate.	
Issuer <u>S</u> tatem	ent
C	ЭK

4. Select the next item in the left pane that requires configuration. When all required items have been configured, press the **Close** button to complete installation. See <u>System Restart after Configuration</u>.



User Credentials for Configuring the System Management Server

In some circumstances, when configuring the System Management Server, you may be prompted to enter your user credentials. This may happen if the logged in user does not belong to the **aaAdministrators** or **Administrators** OS group. If you are a member of either of these groups, enter your user name as **DomainName\UserName**.

If you are not a member of **aaAdministrators** or **Administrators** on the local machine, you can obtain configuration privileges by editing the file **appsettings.json**, and adding the name of the OS group to the file. The full path for this file is:

C:\Program Files (x86)\AVEVA\Platform Common Services\Management Server\appsettings.json.

To add configuration privileges for the System Management Server to an OS group, add the name of the OS group to the json file, after "aaAdministrators."

```
"AppSetting": {
    "AllowGroups": [
        "aaAdministrators",
        "insert new group name here"
]
```

Redundant SSO Configuration

The **Configure this machine as a redundant SSO Server** option lets you configure a non-SMS node as a redundant Single Sign-On server. This option is available if you configure the node to connect to an existing SMS.

The SMS node, when also configured as an authentication server, will normally provide an OpenID Connect token that allows user-authentication in a single sign on environment. By configuring a redundant SSO server, System Platform products can acquire OpenID Connect tokens for SSO, even if the SMS node cannot be reached. More than one RSSO server can be configured.

For information about configuring an authentication provider and using one or more redundant SSO servers, see the following sections:

- <u>Recommended SMS Architecture Utilizing an Authentication Provider</u>
- <u>Simplified SMS Architecture Utilizing an Authentication Provider</u>
- Minimum SMS Architecture Utilizing an Authentication Provider

Advanced Configuration Options

The **Advanced** button opens the **Advanced Configuration** dialog window. The Advanced Configuration window consists of three tabs:

- **Certificate:** See <u>Certificates Tab</u> for information about configuring the certificate for secure communications.
- Ports: See Ports Tab for information about configuring the http and https communication ports.
- **Communications:** See <u>Communications Tab</u> for information about enabling or disabling the ability to use a non-encrypted channel for SuiteLink communications, and limiting which users have access to NMX communications.



Advanced Con	figuration	n			x
Certificates	Ports	Communica	ations		
In order to e be configure Certificates	enable co ed. can either	mmunications r be provided	via encrypted channels (e.g. HTTPS), certi by your IT department or automatically ge	ficates a enerated	re required to
Configurat	tion				
Please	select the	e appropriate	options below.		
Certific	ate <u>S</u> ourc	:e:	Automatically Generated 🗸		
C <u>e</u> rtifi	cate:		See ASB		<u>D</u> etails
Syster	n <u>M</u> anage	ement Server:		Por <u>t</u> :	443
			<u>c</u>	<u>ρ</u> κ	<u>C</u> ancel

• System Management Server: If you are connecting to an existing System Management Server, the name and port number of the server you selected is shown.

Certificates Tab

System Management Server uses a security certificate to ensure that communication between System Platform nodes is encrypted. The certificates tab includes the following configurable fields:

- **Certificate Source:** Select either **Automatically Generated** (default), or **Provided by IT.** If your IT department is providing the certificate, press the **Import** button and navigate to the certificate file. For more information, see <u>Certificates Tab</u>.
- **Certificate:** The certificate name is displayed. If you imported a certificate, you view it by pressing the **Details** button. The certificate is periodically renewed through an automatic update process, both on the server node and on remote nodes.

To import a signed CA certificate, select the **Provided by IT** option from the **Certificate Source** drop down menu. The **Import Certificate** dialog window opens.



Import Certificate		x
Certificate File (.pfx):		
Certificate Store:		
Intermediate		~
Password:		
	OK	Cancel

- 1. Navigate to the Certificate file by pressing the browser button. Select the Certificate file and press **Open**. The Certificate file must have a .PFX extension.
- 2. Select the Certificate Store in which to save the Certificate, as directed by your IT department.
- **3**. Enter the Certificate password.

Ports Tab

The System Management Server uses HTTP and HTTPS for communications with certain AVEVA software, such as the AVEVA System Monitor. Remote nodes must be configured with the same port numbers as configured here.

By default, the System Management Server uses HTTP port 80 and HTTPS port 443. Generally, you can use the default settings. To change the default ports, click the **Advanced** button, then select the **Ports** tab and edit the port numbers as needed. See <u>Changing Ports for the System Management Server</u> for more information.

- Default HTTP port: 80
- Default HTTPS port: 443

Some Application Server communications drivers require some additional, manual configuration if you change the default port(s) used for the System Management Server. This manual configuration is required if you changed a port for the System Management Server and are using either the MQTT Communications Driver or the Auto Build function in Application Server. See <u>Changing Ports for the System Management Server</u> for more information.

Important! If you have installed InTouch Access Anywhere Secure Gateway on the same node as other System Platform components, there will be a port conflict if you keep the default port settings for System Management Server. You can either (1) change the Common Platform Port number(s) in the **Advanced Configuration** dialog to proceed or, (2) edit the configuration file for the Secure Gateway. See <u>Configuring Ports for the InTouch Access</u> <u>Anywhere Secure Gateway</u> for information on changing the port number.

Changing Ports for the System Management Server

Some communication drivers used with Application Server require additional, manual configuration if you change one or both of the default port(s) used for the System Management Server during initial configuration, or a port used by the System Management Server is changed at any time after that. This additional configuration is required if you use either of the following:

• The **Auto Build** function in Application Server. The Auto Build function uses either the ABCIP or SIDirect Communications Driver.



• MQTT Communications Driver.

This configuration is not required if you do not change the default System Management ports (HTTP port 80 and HTTPS port 443). However, if a non-default port is configured and then changed back to the default port number, manual configuration is required.

Configure the ports after you have completed all installation and configuration steps, and anytime you change a port number for the System Management Server.

To configure a port for System Management Server

- 1. As Administrator, open a command prompt or Windows PowerShell window.
- 2. Run the following command:
 - If you changed the HTTP port, run this command: netsh http add urlacl url=http://localhost:<changed HTTP port number>/oi/ user="NT SERVICE\GDIWebServer"
 - If you changed the HTTPS port, run this command: netsh http add urlacl url=https://localhost:<changed HTTPS port number>/oi/ user="NT SERVICE\GDIWebServer"
- 3. Open the Windows Control Panel and select Services.
- 4. Select Aveva Communication Backend Service and restart the service.

Communications Tab



Advanced Cor	nfiguratior	1		×
C <u>e</u> rtificates	<u>P</u> orts	Comm <u>u</u> nications		
Use this tab Many AVEV example: In Refer to you	to config A and 3rd Touch HN ur product	ure the behavior of A Party products that in II, Historian, OI Servers t's documentation or c	/EVA communications protocols. tegrate with System Platform use these protocols. For s (CDP), Batch Management, Workflow, and others. ontact technical support for more information.	
- Suitelink -				
Suitelin	k is a TCP,	/IP based communicat	ions protocol.	
Suitelin node ar encrypt	k commu nd other r ted Suiteli	nications between pro nodes can be encrypte nk connection request	cesses on this node, and between processes on this d. Please select the appropriate handling for non- s.	
	ept non-e	encrypted Suitelink cor	nnections (mixed mode).	
Mixed r support	node is re ting legacy	commended for use on / applications.	ly during online (node-by-node) upgrades and/or	
NOTE: (Changes t	o this setting require a	reboot in order to take effect.	
Network I NMX is commu that are NMX ao	Message E an AVEVA inication t e members ccess auth	Exchange (NMX) A application communi ransport mechanism. A s of a well-known OS (porization on this node	cation protocol that uses a DCOM-based Authorization to access NMX can be restricted to users Jser Group. Please select the appropriate handling for	
<u> </u>	int access	to NMX for all users (N	NOT RECOMMENDED)	
NOTE: (Changes t	o this setting require a	reboot in order to take effect.	
			<u>O</u> K <u>C</u> ancel	

SuiteLink Mixed Mode Setting

Prior to System Platform 2023, enabling the System Management Server, either by connecting to an existing server or by setting this machine as the System Management Server resulted in the following behavior for SuiteLink connections:

- The system first attempted to make a secure connection between a SuiteLink client and the SuiteLink server.
- If a secure connection could not be established, an unsecured SuiteLink connection was made. Users were not notified if the SuiteLink connection was not secure.

As of System Platform 2023, the System Platform Configurator includes an option to force all communications to be encrypted for SuiteLink connections.

- Mixed mode enabled: This is the default setting if you are upgrading a node from a prior release. With the checkbox set to true (checked), the behavior described above is used, in which unsecured connections are allowed. This mimics legacy System Platform behavior, prior to the System Platform 2023 release. This setting is NOT RECOMMENDED except for the use cases listed below.
- **Mixed mode disabled:** This is the default setting for new installations. With the checkbox set to false (unchecked), client connections to the SuiteLink server are only successful if the connection is secured, that



is both nodes must configured to use the System Management Server. This option ensures that the connection between the SuiteLink Server and SuiteLink clients is always secure (encrypted). If a secure connection is not available, the connection will not be allowed. A secure connection between client and server is only possible if both are configured to use the System Management Server.

Mixed Mode Use Cases

Mixed mode is recommended for use under the following conditions:

- While upgrading an existing System Platform installation (performing a node-by-node upgrade). Reset the mode to disable mixed mode after the upgrade is complete.
- To support legacy applications that do not use encrypted SuiteLink communications.

Note: Whenever the SuiteLink communication mode is changed, a system restart is required before the new mode will take effect.

NMX User Access Setting

The AVEVA Network Message Exchange (NMX) is an application communication protocol that leverages a DCOMbased transport mechanism for communication between nodes. For new installations, the default setting is to disable access for all users to NMX communications. If you are upgrading an existing System Platform installation, access for all users is enabled by default. Reset the mode to restrict access after you complete the node-by-node upgrade.

- Grant access to NMX for all users: This is the default setting if you are upgrading a node from a prior release. With the checkbox to true (checked), NMX communication is enabled for all users. Allowing access for all users is NOT RECOMMENDED except for the use cases listed below.
- **Restrict access to NMX:** This is the default setting for new installations. To restrict access to only users who are members of a well-known OS User Group, leave the setting as false (unchecked). This is the recommended setting.

Access to NMX for All Users Use Cases

Access for all users is recommended for use under the following conditions:

- While upgrading an existing System Platform installation (performing a node-by-node upgrade). Reset the mode to disable access for all users after the upgrade is complete.
- To support legacy applications that require access for all users.

Note: Whenever the NMX mode is changed, a system restart is required before the new mode will take effect.

Authentication Provider Configuration

To configure an Authentication Provider, the node must be configured as either the System Management Server node, or as a redundant SSO node. As an Authentication Provider, the node uses Azure Active Directory as the identity provider and allows Single Sign-On (SSO) for System Platform users via their Microsoft-managed credentials.

Users log in to the Authentication Provider through the AVEVA Identity Manager, a standalone authentication server. See <u>Configure the AVEVA Identity Manager</u> for details.



Note: For a galaxy to utilize an external Authentication Provider, the SMS server must be configured on a deployed platform (for example, a GR node), or at least one deployed platform should configured as a Redundant SSO server. Deployed platforms include GR nodes, IDE nodes, and AppEngine (run-time) nodes.

- Click the checkbox to enable the node as an Authentication Provider. Then, configure the Token Host as described below.
- Leave this option disabled if you are not using Azure AD, then click **Configure**. When the checkbox is unchecked (disabled), the fields to configure the Token Host are hidden.



To **Configure Token Host**, enter the following information:

- Endpoint: copy the OpenID Connect metadata document from the Endpoints section (under Overview) of the application page on the Azure Portal. Do not include the portion of the OpenID Connect metadata after "v2.0." See <u>Collect Azure AD Configuration Information</u> for details.
- **Client ID:** if you did not save this when you were creating your application, you can copy the Application (client) ID from the Essentials section (under Overview) of the application page on the Azure Portal.
- Client Secret: This refers to the secret value. If you did not save the value when you were creating your application, you may need to create a new secret from the Certificates & Secrets page of the Azure Portal. If the value is not being displayed, there is no way to retrieve it.

When you have entered all required information, click Configure, then proceed as prompted.



Configure the AVEVA Identity Manager

The AVEVA Identity Manager (AIM) is a standalone authentication server that exposes an OpenID Connect endpoint. The System Management Server must be configured before using AIM; this is typically done during System Platform installation via the Configurator. After setting the Galaxy security mode to allow external authentication providers, the Azure Active Directory (AD) can be used as the identity authenticator for single sign-on, without relying on Windows-based authentication. You must have an Azure account and have access to the Microsoft Azure Portal to configure and use Azure AD as an authenticator.

Configure Azure AD as an Identity Provider

You can configure the AVEVA Identity Manager (AIM) to use Azure AD as an external identity provider. With Azure AD configured as the identity provider, users can use their Microsoft-managed web credentials to log into AIM. Before you can start using Azure AD, however, you must register the AIM server as an Azure AD application and configure it.

Register the AIM server as an Azure AD application

- 1. Sign into the Azure AD home page: <u>https://portal.azure.com</u>.
- 2. Select **Manage Azure Active Directory** (click the View button below the image), or type "Azure Active Directory" in the search box at the top of the page and select it from the list of services displayed.
- 3. If necessary, select Manage tenants to create or switch tenants when the Azure AD Overview page opens.
- Select the Application Registration icon (at the bottom of the page) to register your AIM server as an application in the Azure Portal. (You can use the +Add button from the command bar, then select App registration instead of using the icon.)



Add application registration

- 5. Enter a name for the application (user-facing display name) and select the account type (for example, single tenant or mult-tenant). Do not configure the Redirect URI at this time.
- 6. Register the application.

Configure the Azure AD application

1. When the application is registered, select Add a Redirect URI from the Essentials area of the page.



😑 Microsoft Azure	$\mathcal P$ Search resources, services, and docs (G+/)		🙆
Home >	>		
ң МуАрр 🖈 …			×
	« 📋 Delete 🕀 Endpoints 🐼 Preview	features	
Nverview	A		A
📣 Quickstart	← Essentials		
Integration assistant	Display name	: МуАрр	
-	Application (client) ID	: 6b73b11	
Manage	Object ID	: 3212cc 18	
🚟 Branding	Directory (tenant) ID	: 425a55	
Authentication	Supported account types	: My organization only	
Certificates & secrets	Client credentials	: Add a certificate or secret	
	Redirect URIs	: Add a Redirect URI	
Token configuration	Application ID URI	: Add an Application ID URI	
API permissions	Managed application in local directory	: МуАрр	
🐴 Evnoso an ADI			

2. Under Platform configurations, select Add a platform.

☐ Save X Discard A Got feedback?

Platform configurations

Depending on the platform or device this application is targeting, additional configuration may redirect URIs, specific authentication settings, or fields specific to the platform.



Supported account types

Who can use this application or access this API?

• Accounts in this organizational directory only (AVEVA Solutions Limited only - Single tenant)

Accounts in any organizational directory (Any Azure AD directory - Multitenant)

3. In the Configure platforms pane, select Web.

4. Enter the Redirect URIs in the format: https://{FQDN}/identitymanager/signin-azuread

where FQDN is the fully qualified domain name (full computer name, in the format <computer name>.<domain>) of the machine where the AVEVA Identity Manager is installed. Note that the URL is case-sensitive and must match the case of the URL path of your application.

5. Enter the Front-channel logout URL in the format: https://{FQDN}/identitymanager/signedout-callbackazuread

where FQDN is the fully qualified domain name of the machine where the AVEVA Identity Manager is installed. Note that the URL is case-sensitive and must match the case of the URL path of your application.

- 6. Allow the application to issue ID tokens by enabling both of the following:
 - Access tokens (used for implicit flows)
 - ID tokens (used for implicit and hybrid flows)



- 7. Under Token configuration > Optional claims, select Add groups claim.
- 8. In the Edit groups claim section, and add Security Groups.



This will add tokens for Group ID.

Configure Azure AD API Permissions

When you configure and register your app, it will only have limited permissions granted. You must add additional permissions manually.

1. Select API Permissions from the resource menu (left pane).

The **Microsoft Graph** API will show only **User.Read** permissions.

Manage						
🚾 Branding	Configured permissions					
Authentication	Applications are authorized to call A of configured permissions should in	Applications are authorized to call APIs when they are granted permissions by users/admins as part of the consent process. The list of configured permissions should include all the permissions the application needs. Learn more about permissions and consent				
📍 Certificates & secrets						
Token configuration	+ Add a permission V Grant admin consent for					
 API permissions 	API / Permissions name T	ype	Description	Admin consent required	Status	
Expose an API	✓ Microsoft Graph (1)					•••
👢 App roles	User.Read D	elegated	Sign in and read user profile	No		
🐣 Owners						
& Roles and administrators Preview	To view and manage permissions and user consent, try Enterprise applications.					

- 2. Click on Microsoft Graph. The Request API permissions pane opens.
- 3. Delegated permissions: At the top of pane, under the question "What type of permissions does your application require?," select Delegated permissions.
- 4. To choose permissions, type the first few letters of the following permissions in the **Select permissions** text box until the applicable permissions group appears. Then, expand the permissions group and select the matching permission to enable it.
 - Under OpenId permissions: Add openid (sign users in)
 - Under User permissions: Add User.Read (sign in and read user profile) this is automatically selected
- 5. Click the Update permissions button.
- 6. Application permissions: At the top of pane, under the question "What type of permissions does your application require?," select Application permissions.



- 7. To choose permissions, type the first few letters of the following permissions in the **Select permissions** text box until the applicable permissions group appears. Then, expand the permissions group and select the matching permission to enable it.
 - Under Directory permissions: Add Directory.Read.All (read directory data)
 - Under Group permissions: Add Group.Read.All under Group (read all groups)
 - Under User permissions: Add User.Read.All (read all users' full profiles)
- 8. Click the Update permissions button.
- 9. Click Grant admin consent for <tenant name>. All configured permissions you added in the previous step should now be listed, as shown below.

Configured permissions					
Applications are authorized to ca all the permissions the application	all APIs when they a on needs. Learn mo	are granted permissions by users/admins as pa re about permissions and consent	art of the consent process. The list of con	figured permissions should ir	nclude
+ Add a permission 🗸 Gr	ant admin consent	for			
API / Permissions name	Туре	Description	Admin consent requ	Status	
〜 Microsoft Graph (5)					
Directory.Read.All	Application	Read directory data	Yes	Granted for	
Group.Read.All	Application	Read all groups	Yes	Granted for	
openid	Delegated	Sign users in	No	Granted for	
User.Read	Delegated	Sign in and read user profile	No	Granted for	
User.Read.All	Application	Read all users' full profiles	Yes	Granted for	

To view and manage permissions and user consent, try Enterprise applications.

Collect Azure AD Configuration Information

To use Azure AD as an authentication provider, you need to collect the following information:

- Client ID
- Endpoint
- Client Secret
- 1. Sign into the Azure AD home page: https://portal.azure.com.
- 2. Select **App registrations** from the **Resource Menu**. A list of the apps that belong to you or your organization is shown.
- 3. To begin collecting information, select the app.
- 4. Application (client) ID is displayed under Essentials information. Copy and save the ID. You will need this to configure the System Management Server.



Ĺ	🕽 Delete 🌐 Endpoints	🐼 Preview features
	∧ Essentials	
	Display name	: МуАрр
	Application (client) ID	: 6b 34
	Object ID	: 32 35
	Directory (tenant) ID	: 42

5. Select Endpoints from the Command bar, then select the OpenID Connect metadata document.

Endpoints		\times
OAuth 2.0 authorization endpoint (v2)		
https://login.microsoftonline.com/)3/oauth2/v2.0/authorize	D
OAuth 2.0 token endpoint (v2)		
https://login.microsoftonline.com/	93/oauth2/v2.0/token	D
OAuth 2.0 authorization endpoint (v1)		
https://login.microsoftonline.com/4)3/oauth2/authorize	D
OAuth 2.0 token endpoint (v1)		
https://login.microsoftonline.com/	93/oauth2/token	D
OpenID Connect metadata document	Copy to c	lipboar
https://login.microsoftonline.com/	93/v2.0/.well-known/openid-configuration	D
Microsoft Graph API endpoint		
https://graph.microsoft.com		D
Federation metadata document		
https://login.microsoftonline.com/	93/federationmetadata/2007-06/federationmetadata.xml	D
WS-Federation sign-on endpoint		
https://login.microsoftonline.com/	93/wsfed	D
SAML-P sign-on endpoint		
https://login.microsoftonline.com/-	93/saml2	D
SAML-P sign-out endpoint		
have a final sector of the second)2/caml2	ĥ

The portion of the OpenID Connect information after "v2.0" is not used when configuring AVEVA Identity Manager.

Thus, the endpoint used to configure AIM is https://login.microsoftonline.com/************/v2.0

The trailing slash is not needed.

- 6. Select Certificates & Secrets from the Command bar, then select New Client Secret.
- 7. Add a **Description** for the new client. Then, **Add** the secret.



Add a client secret		×
Description	Secret1	
Expires	Recommended: 6 months	~
Add Cancel		

8. Once you add the secret, copy and save the secret **value**. You will need the value to configure the System Management Server (the secret ID is not needed for configuration).

Note: Be sure to save the value now. You will not be able to retrieve it later.

Configure the IDE Authentication Mode

Important! To configure security using **Authentication providers** mode, the System Platform IDE user must be a member of the aaConfigTools group on the local IDE node.

1. On the Galaxy menu, click Configure and then click Security. The Configure Security dialog box appears.

	AVEVA Syste	tem Platform IDE 🛛 😑 - 🗖 🗙
← ŵ Home ∲ New	Configure	
🗁 Open	O Security Configure or review the galaxy's security settings	Select mode
 User AVEVA Connect Import Export Configure Close 	Galaxy Styles Configure or review the galaxy's quality status, element styles and format styles: Alarms Configure or review the galaxy's alarm priority and severity mapping Language Configure or review the galaxy's languages	 None Galaxy OS User based QS Group based Authentication providers Uses AuthenticationProviders groups based authentication. Note: Some of the existing Users and Roles are not valid in this Authentication m
	Integrated development environment Communication	 ✓ ✓ Configurable intervals
	System Time master Configure source of time synchronization Services Configure and deploy services for this galaxy	Cogin time 1000 Role update 0
License License		Cancel Save

- 2. Select Authentication providers mode.
- 3. Switch to the Roles tab.
- 4. Enter the Azure AD group name or select it from the dropdown list, then click the + button.

The AIM Security providers (e.g., Azure AD) are available in a dropdown (e.g., list of Azure domains). You can select a provider from the dropdown list instead of entering the name.

- 5. Once you have selected a provider, the available groups from the provider are listed.
 - A role always contains only one group.



- You can use multi-select for adding groups. Adding multiple groups creates multiple roles.
- A role name is always the same as the group name and cannot be changed.
- Users in the added groups are automatically members of the roles that are created.
- OS Groups are irrelevant in the context of Authentication Provider security.
- All users that form part of the hierarchy below the added group will automatically have the role assigned, whether they are members of the top-level group or of any of the sub-level groups.
- 6. Switch to the Users tab.
 - The Users tab lists all users as authorized by their memberships within their assigned roles.
 - To see the roles assigned to a user, select the user.
 - You cannot add or delete users in the **Users** tab when the Authentication mode is set to **Authentication providers**.
 - Users cannot have their Roles added or removed. For details, see "Assigning Users to Roles" in the *Application Server User Guide*.

License Mode Configuration

License Mode includes two settings:

- Determines if the System Platform installation type is Supervisory or Enterprise. The default type is Supervisory.
- Enables/disables Flex license mode. Flex license mode uses subscription licensing. Flex is disabled by default mode (perpetual license).

The license mode settings must match the type of license and installation that have been activated for the License Server.

Flex mode is required for System Platform Enterprise.

Note: Any change to the License Mode requires a system restart before the change takes effect. When you select the License Mode for configuration, a warning that you must restart your system is displayed. After all items are configured for an installation or upgrade, you can allow the Configurator to perform an automatic system restart. If you make any changes to License Mode after installation or upgrade, a manual restart is required.

To configure the License Mode

1. In the Configurator, select License Mode under Common Platform in the left pane.





- 2. Select the Flex licensing mode to used for the Galaxy Repository:
 - Disable Flex Mode: Leave the checkbox unchecked if you are using perpetual licenses.
 - Enable Flex Mode: Check the checkbox if you are using subscription-based Flex licenses. This is required for System Platform Enterprise, and can be used for System Platform Supervisory.

Note: Changing the Flex license mode requires a restart before the change takes effect.

- **3.** Select the product type you are installing. The type is determined by the System Platform license you purchased:
 - System Platform Supervisory: Includes InTouch HMI (WindowMaker, WindowViewer), but does not include certain apps, features, and widgets such as the PI Vision OMI App, Power BI OMI App, the AVEVA OMI Web Server and Workspaces, and a number of widgets.
 - System Platform Enterprise: Does not include InTouch HMI, but does include an expanded set of apps, features, and widgets.

Note: Changing the product type requires a restart before the change takes effect.

See <u>Selecting System Platform and System Platform Enterprise Components</u> for more information.

4. Select the next item in the left pane that requires configuration. When all required items have been configured, press the **Close** button to complete installation. See <u>System Restart after Configuration</u>.



Designing a Robust SSO System with an External Authentication Provider

Adding Azure AD as an authentication provider to the System Management Server allows several different ways to configure your System Platform installation. The following configurations provide varying degrees of system robustness, redundancy, and complexity. Use the architecture that most closely aligns with your requirements.

Recommended SMS Architecture Utilizing an Authentication Provider

This system design contains a minimum of three nodes for user authentication, and provides the highest level of robustness and redundancy. It is also the most architecturally complex.

Node 1 - Standalone SMS

Configure the System Management Server on the license server or System Monitor server.

- On the System Management Server configuration tab, select the option "This machine is the System Management Server."
- On the Authentication Provider tab:
 - Select the checkbox to "Configure this machine to provide SSO via an external Authentication Provider."
 - Configure the token host.

Note: This node is not deployable since it does not contain a WinPlatform object. As a result, it may not be reachable by other nodes under certain circumstances. Therefore, Redundant SSO nodes are required.

Node 2 - Redundant SSO Node on the GR

Configure the GR node or other deployable node, such as an IDE node, as a Redundant SSO node.

- On the System Management Server configuration tab, select the option "Connect to an existing System Management Server."
 - Select node 1 as the existing SMS node.
 - Select the checkbox "Configure this machine as a Redundant SSO Server."
- On the Authentication Provider tab:
 - Select the checkbox to "Configure this machine to provide SSO via an external Authentication Provider."
 - Configure the token host.

Node 2 is now now configured to provide user authentication via the SSO provider in the event node 1 is unreachable.

Node 3 - Second Redundant SSO Node on a Deployed Platform

Configure an IDE node or other deployable node, such as an AppEngine node, as a second Redundant SSO node.

- On the System Management Server configuration tab, select the option "Connect to an existing System Management Server."
 - Select node 1 as the existing SMS node.
 - Select the checkbox "Configure this machine as a Redundant SSO Server."



- On the Authentication Provider tab:
 - Select the checkbox to "Configure this machine to provide SSO via an external Authentication Provider."
 - Configure the token host.

Node 3 is now now configured as a second redundant authentication provider.

Node 4 though n

- On the System Management Server configuration tab, select the option "Connect to an existing System Management Server."
 - Select node 1 as the existing SMS node.
 - For the option to configure the node as a Redundant SSO Server, leave the checkbox unchecked.
- On the Authentication Provider tab:
 - Select the checkbox to "Configure this machine to provide SSO via an external Authentication Provider."

Note: Since this node is not a redundant authentication provider, the fields to configure a token host are not shown.

Simplified SMS Architecture Utilizing an Authentication Provider

This system design contains a minimum of two nodes for user authentication, and provides robustness and redundancy.

Node 1 - SMS on the GR or other Deployed Platform

In this simplified architecture, the System Management Server is typically installed on a GR node.

- On the System Management Server configuration tab, select the option "This machine is the System Management Server."
- On the Authentication Provider tab:
 - Select the checkbox to "Configure this machine to provide SSO via an external Authentication Provider."
 - Configure the token host.

Node 2 - Redundant SSO Node on the IDE

The System Management Server is typically installed on an IDE node or AppServer (run-time) node.

- On the System Management Server configuration tab, select the option "Connect to an existing System Management Server."
 - Select node 1 as the existing SMS node.
 - Select the checkbox "Configure this machine as a Redundant SSO Server."
- On the Authentication Provider tab:
 - Select the checkbox to "Configure this machine to provide SSO via an external Authentication Provider."
 - Configure the token host.



Node 2 is now configured as a redundant authentication provider.

Node 3 though n

- On the System Management Server configuration tab, select the option "Connect to an existing System Management Server."
 - Select node 1 as the existing SMS node.
 - For the option to configure the node as a Redundant SSO Server, leave the checkbox unchecked.
- On the Authentication Provider tab:
 - Select the checkbox to "Configure this machine to provide SSO via an external Authentication Provider."

Note: Since this node is not a redundant authentication provider, the fields to configure a token host are not shown.

Minimum SMS Architecture Utilizing an Authentication Provider

This system design uses a single node for user authentication. This design does not provide for redundancy.

Node 1 - SMS on the GR or other Deployed Platform

In this minimum architecture, the System Management Server is typically installed on the GR node.

- On the System Management Server configuration tab, select the option "This machine is the System Management Server."
- On the Authentication Provider tab:
 - Select the checkbox to "Configure this machine to provide SSO via an external Authentication Provider."
 - Configure the token host.

Node 2 though *n*

- On the System Management Server configuration tab, select the option "Connect to an existing System Management Server."
 - Select node 1 as the existing SMS node.
 - For the option to configure the node as a redundant SSO Server, leave the checkbox unchecked .
- On the Authentication Provider tab:
 - Select the checkbox to "Configure this machine to provide SSO via an external Authentication Provider."

Note: Since this node is not a redundant authentication provider, the fields to configure a token host are not shown.

Industrial Graphic Server Configuration

The Industrial Graphic Server is installed whenever the InTouch run-time component is installed on a node, and lets users view InTouch HMI applications in a web browser. There are two configuration items for the Industrial Graphic Server:



- Client Settings: This sets how frequently the Web Client refreshes graphics and alarms.
- Authentication Settings: This establishes the credentials that the Web Client will use for connecting to the web server.

Note: If a System Management Server is configured, the InTouch Web Client will use the security certificate and utilize the HTTPS protocol for secure communications. See <u>Common Platform</u> for additional information.

To configure Client Settings

- 1. Under **Graphic Refresh Rate**, set the screen refresh interval. This determines how frequently the web browser will query the web server for graphic data. A longer interval reduces network traffic and may be needed for very low-bandwidth networks or intermittent connections.
 - Default: 1000 ms (1 second)
 - Minimum: 250 ms
 - Maximum: 60000 ms (60 seconds)

Note: The Graphic Refresh Rate cannot be less than the Alarm Refresh Rate. If you lengthen the Graphic Refresh Rate, the Alarm Refresh Rate will automatically synchronize with the Graphic Refresh Rate.

- 2. Under Alarm Refresh Rate, set the alarm refresh interval. This determines how frequently the web browser will query the web server for alarm data. By default, the Alarm Refresh Rate is the same as the Graphic Refresh rate. You can make the refresh interval longer for alarms than for graphics, but the Alarm Refresh Rate cannot be shorter than the Graphic Refresh Rate. A longer interval may be needed for very low-bandwidth networks or intermittent connections.
 - Default: 1000 ms (1 second)
 - Minimum: Graphic Refresh Rate
 - Maximum: 60000 ms (60 seconds)

To configure Authentication Settings

- 1. In the Configurator, select Authentication Settings. There are two options:
 - Windows Authentication (default). Skip to step 3 if you are using Windows Authentication.
 - User Authentication. User Authentication lets you configure the Web Client to use Single Sign-On using the AVEVA Identity Manager. The System Management Server must be configured before selecting this option, and is used as the AVEVA Identity Manager.
- 2. User Authentication configuration (optional): To allow access outside the plant network, enter the Secure Gateway URL, which is a secure reverse proxy server installed in the DMZ.
- 3. Press the Configure button.
- 4. Select the next item in the left pane that requires configuration. When all required items have been configured, press the **Close** button to complete installation. See <u>System Restart after Configuration</u>.

AVEVA Historian Configuration

You can use the Configurator to configure Historian settings.

Note: Before running the Configurator, be sure SQL Server is installed and running. Also, be sure you have SQL Server administrator rights.



You can start the Configurator at any time from the Windows Start menu on the Historian computer.

- To configure Common Platform (PCS) settings, see Common Platform.
- To configure licensing, see AVEVA Enterprise License Server Configuration.

To configure AVEVA Historian:

1. Launch the Configurator from the Start menu. In the left pane, click **Server**.

Configurator			x
<u>File</u> <u>H</u> elp			
Common Platform System Management Server Authentication Provider	Database Information	SP-BL01	
Clicense Mode Industrial Graphics Server Client Settings Authoritication Settings	Data <u>b</u> ase Path:	C:\Program Files\Microsoft SQL Server\MSSQL15.MSSQL	
Authentication Settings	Data <u>P</u> ath:	C:\Historian	
Server Security Search	Existing Database Co	nflict new database	
Reporting AVEVA Enterprise Licensing Platforr AVEVA Enterprise License Se AVEVA System Monitor	Alarms and Events St High-speed: Histo <u>I</u> raditional: SQL S	orage ory bloc <u>k</u> s, store up to 1,000 messages/second (recommended) server, store up to 100 messages/second	
Aveva System Monitor System Monitor Manager Alert Email Server	Network Historian T <u>C</u> P Port:	32568 Rest Configuration	
	Search Port:	32570	
	Security Allow remote acces	ss for OC <u>M</u> C	
Co	nfiguration Messages		
N N	licrosoft .NET Framework: Version 2.0.50727.4927 Version 3.0.30729.4926		^
	Version 3.5.30729.4926 Version 4.0.0.0 Version 4.8.3761		
< > P	re-Requisite:SQLServer Co	ondition met	~
Refresh All Mess	ages	Configure <u>C</u> lose	•

2. Under Database Information, specify the SQL Instances and database path.

• SQL Instance

Name the SQL Instance associated with this historian.

• Database Path

Unless you have specific requirements, keep the default SQL Server database path. The default is tied to your SQL Server installation and is the path where the configuration database is deployed. If you need to change the default path, click the ellipsis button to specify a different directory in which to install the historian database files.

3. Under Existing Database Conflict, read any notices.

If the database is created for the first time, then this option is not available. When reconfiguration is done, then the **Drop and Create New Database** option is available. If you select this check box, then the existing database is dropped and a new database is created. If this check box is cleared, then the database is not dropped, but configured for changes, if any.

4. Under Alarms & Events Storage, configure how you want to store alarm and events.


Important: If you want to change this setting later after the Historian is running, you must first shut down and disable the historian using the Management Console. Then, after making the change, you can restart and enable the historian.

• High-speed (default/recommended)

The high-speed setting for storing alarms and events in history blocks provides several advantages. You can manage the data using simple operations such as moving, copying, or deleting folders, instead of using database management software. With this storage method, you no longer need to purge to sustain storage. This method offers significantly higher storage rates. Also, the capacity for alarm and event storage is only limited by disk space, not by insertion rate.

• Traditional

The traditional setting stores alarms and events in the A2ALMDB SQL Server database. This works well for smaller applications. Alarm and event data stored in the A2ALMDB database can be retrieved using SQL queries. You can also use SQL Server tools, such as Reporting Services, to query alarm and event history.

- 5. Under **Network**, accept the default Historian TCP and Search ports or change these settings. The ports you specify are added to the exclusions list of Windows Firewall. You must manually add these ports as exclusions if you use another hardware or software firewall.
 - **Historian TCP port** is used for receiving data from another system. If you are sending data to Historian from an Application Engine, Remote IDAS or from another Historian, you must specify this port as part of the connection settings on those source systems.
 - Search port is an internal port, only accessible locally on the server, and is used to support searches in Historian Client Web. This is not configurable and is for reference only.
- 6. Select the **Historian Rest Details** to configure remote access to the Historian REST API and Historian Client Web. The **Rest Configuration** dialog displays.

Certificates				
In order to enable o	ommunications via encrypted char	nels (e.g. HTTPS), certificates are re	equired to be configured.	
Certificates can eithe	er be provided by your IT departm	ent or automatically generated.		
Please select the ap	propriate options below.			
Certificate <u>S</u> ource:	Provided by IT (import / select	t)	~ Import	i
<u>C</u> ertificate:	SP-BL01 AVEVA Historian		▼ <u>D</u> etails	
Ports				
HTTP <u>P</u> ort:	32569	H <u>T</u> TPS Port: 3257	3	
Connections				
 <u>Favor trusted co</u> <u>R</u>equire trusted of 	nnections, but permit untrusted co connections (clients must trust this	nnections certificate)		

To configure the HTTPS connection, a certificate is required. You can use a certificate provided by your IT department, or you can use a self-signed certificate generated by the configurator.



For more details about using enabling encrypted communication for the Historian, see <u>Using HTTPS Instead</u> of HTTP for Historian Client, Historian Client Web, and REST APIs.

- a. To use a certificate provided by your IT department, select "Provided by IT (import / select)" as the **Certificate Source**.
 - If the certificate is already installed on the system, select the appropriate **Certificate** from the list.
 - If you have been provided with a certificate but it is not yet installed on the system, click **Import...**. The **Import Certificate** dialog displays.

Import Certificates		
Certificate File (.pfx):		
Certificate Store:		
Personal		~
Password:		
	<u>O</u> K	<u>C</u> ancel

Click to browse and select the certificate file, which has a .pfx file extension.

- Select the Certificate Store in which to save the Certificate, as directed by your IT department.
- Enter the Certificate password and click OK when all the information is correct.
- **b.** To use a self-signed certificate, select "Automatically Generated" as the **Certificate Source**. The name of the **Certificate** is automatically selected for you and cannot be changed.

Using a self-signed certificate makes it easier to configure the server, but it makes the remote browsing experience more complicated, with users receive security warnings in their browser until the certificate is "trusted" on their system.

Note: After configuring the Historian with an automatically generated self-signed certificate, when you visit this dialog again, the **Certificate Source** is "Provided by IT (import / select)". This is because the certificate is installed on the system after configuration, and can now be selected from the **Certificate** list.

c. Enter the port numbers to use for the **HTTPS Port** and the **HTTP Port**. These ports are used for data queries via Insight or the Historian REST API to the Historian Server.

Note: To allow the correct functioning of the Alarm Control History Blocks, the firewall must be configured to permit inbound and outbound network traffic on these ports.

- d. The **Connections** option determines what happens when a connection is made to Historian Client Web over the untrusted (HTTP) port. Select one of the following options:
 - Favor trusted connections, but permit untrusted connections. When this option is selected, users at run time are informed there is a trusted connection available, and they can decide whether to use



the trusted or untrusted connection. For more information about the run-time options, refer to the *Historian Administrator Guide*.

- **Require trusted connections (clients must trust this certificate)**. When this option is selected, if you are using a certificate from a trusted authority, users are redirected to the HTTPS connection. If you are using an untrusted certificate, such as a self-signed certificate, an informational message is displayed that directs users how to proceed. For more information about this message and how users can proceed, refer to the *Historian Administrator Guide*.
- e. Click **OK** to accept the selected options, then click **Configure** to apply any changes to the system.

For more information about secure, encrypted communication between nodes, see Common Platform.

7. Under Security, select Allow Remote Access for OCMC if you want to allow remote access of this server's Operations Control Management Console (previously called the System Management Console, or SMC). This option is disabled by default for improved security, and we recommend that you use remote desktop software to administer remote Historian servers.

When you select **Allow Remote Access for OCMC**, Historian allows remote connection to the Operations Control Management Console. Specifically, this allows remote launch and remote activation permissions for the aahCfgSvc and aahEventSvc Historian COM services. (By default, these are set to local launch and local activation.) The permissions are limited to the aaAdministrators, aaPowerUsers, and aaUsers groups. Anyone who is not a member of these groups on the server will not see that Historian remotely via SMC.

Important: In 2022, Microsoft is releasing a phased update to address a security issue with DCOM on Windows. After the third phase of this update is applied, administering remote historian servers will no longer be possible using the Operations Control Management Console. Instead, you can administer remote Historian servers by first connecting with the remote desktop software of your choice, and then using the Operations Control Management.

For more up-to-date information about the vulnerability, and a timetable for its phased release, see .

8. In the left pane, click **Security**. Configure the security options as follows.



Configurator			×
<u>F</u> ile <u>H</u> elp			
🖃 🥑 Common Platform	Historian Users		·
System Management Serve	User	Role	Delete User
License Mode	sp-bl01\aauser	Historian Administrators 🔹	
Client Settings	sp-bl01\aagalaxyowner	Historian Administrators 🔹	
Authentication Settings	magathenite (1000) annuae	Historian Administrators 🔹	
Server	magathanite (1000) analose	Historian Power Users 🔹	
Security Search Beporting		Create U <u>s</u> er	Add <u>U</u> sers
AVEVA Enterprise Licensing Platfo	SQL Logins		
AVEVA System Monitor System Monitor Manager Alert Email Server	The SQL logins below (if any) were creat default password. This poses a significar passwords for each login here. Alternati disable these logins. Note: If the list is empty, no action is record	ed by an earlier release of Historian and nt security risk to your system. You must vely, you may use SQL Server Managem quired.	d still use the t set new sent Studio and
	Account Passw	vord	Delete Account
Cor Su Av Ini Ini Ini Ini	nfiguration Messages ccessfully Connected to the Web request. vhsearchindex index exists. (EVA Historian Search prerequisite check c tialize completed. tialize completed. tialize done tialize completed.	ompleted.	
Refresh All Messa	ages	C <u>o</u> nfigure	Close

- a. Under Historian Users, review the existing users and roles for this server. Make adjustments to the list as needed:
 - To create a new user account, click **Create Users** and then specify account details.
 - To add existing user accounts to this list, click Add Users and then select the account criteria to use.
 - If you don't need this account anymore, mark the **Delete Account** check box.
- b. Under SQL Logins, do one of the following to ensure your SQL Server logins are secure:
 - If you want to keep using a default account listed, type a new password.
 - If you don't need this account, mark the **Delete Account** check box.

Note: Secure Development Lifecycle (SDL) guidelines recommend against using automatically created users like aaUser and aaAdminUser with well-known or publicly documented passwords.

When you migrate from an older version of the Historian Server, this area is populated with all preexisting SQL Server accounts and gives you the option to change account password and to delete unused accounts to ensure strong security for your system.

9. In the left pane, click **Search**. Then configure the search options as follows.

Under Search Configuration, specify file locations.



• Data Path

Accept the default path, or click the ellipsis button to specify a different directory for the historian history blocks.

Make sure that you have plenty of space on this drive most of your plant data will be stored here. (The SQL Server database files typically take less disk space.)

- Log Path Accept the default path, or click the ellipsis button to specify a different directory for the log files.
- Mark the Reindex Search Documents check box to create a new index of all existing tags.
- **10.** In the left pane, click **Reporting**. Then mark the appropriate check boxes to configure OData extensions for SQL Reporting Studio or Visual Studio Report Designer on your system.
- 11. In the **Configuration Messages** area, read messages regarding prerequisite checks, current configuration state, and configuration activities that are logged.
- 12. Click **Configure**. The **Processing SQL Script** dialog box appears. You can see the historian database configuration scripts running. Multiple scripts run during the configuration.
- **13**. After the system finishes running the SQL scripts, the Historian node and Historian Server node are shown with a green status indicator if the database is successfully configured.
- 14. Click All Messages to see all the configuration messages.

Using HTTPS Instead of HTTP for Historian Client, Historian Client Web, and REST APIs

Typically, customers using Historian Client Web or the REST API can connect to a Historian server from a Historian Client or other client application using an unencrypted (HTTP) connection. (Even without an encrypted connection, the user credentials exchanged during login are still encrypted.) You can also use an encrypted connection (HTTPS) for the REST API, and this requires configuring an X.509 certificate for TLS (transport layer security).

About TLS, HTTPS, and X.509 Certificates

TLS allows for encrypted authentication credentials to be passed between a server and client. A certificate containing a private key is passed between the client and server to verify identification and allow access.

Using HTTPS ensures that communication between the client and server is encrypted, helping to prevent third parties from stealing or tampering with your data.

To configure the HTTPS connection to the Historian, you need an X.509 certificate. The certificate can be from a trusted authority or a self-signed certificate. During the installation and configuration of the Historian, you can import a certificate from a trusted authority if you have one, otherwise the configurator can create a self-signed certificate for you.

About Configuring Security

When you configure the Historian server, you choose one of two options to control what happens when a user connects using the unencrypted (HTTP) connection:



Connections

- Favor trusted connections, but permit untrusted connections
- Require trusted connections (clients must trust this certificate)

1. Favor trusted connections, but permit untrusted connections

When this option is selected, users are informed there is a trusted connection available, and they can decide how to proceed using one of three options:

You are using an **untrusted** connection to this Historian, but a trusted connection is available. <u>Always use the trusted connection</u> <u>Use the trusted connection this time</u> <u>Continue with the untrusted connection (not recommended)</u>

• Always use the trusted connection

If the user clicks this link, their browser will be permanently redirected to the HTTPS connection. Any future attempts to use the HTTP connection with the same browser are automatically redirected to the HTTPS connection without a prompt.

• Use the trusted connection this time

Clicking this link redirects the browser to the HTTPS connection, but only for this session. The next time a connection is made in a new browser session, the user is prompted to choose again.

Continue with the untrusted connection (not recommended)

If the user clicks this link, the browser continues using the HTTP connection, but only for this session. The next time a connection is made in a new browser session, the user is prompted to choose again.

2. Require trusted connections (clients must trust this certificate)

When this option is selected, if you are using a certificate from a trusted authority, users are redirected to the HTTPS connection.

If you are using an untrusted certificate, such as a self-signed certificate, the following informational message is displayed:

This Historian requires an encrypted connection, but the server is not fully configured in a way your browser will trust it. If you are an administrator, you can <u>learn more about this problem and how to correct it</u> and if you are not, please contact your administrator about this problem. If you accept the warning messages from your browser, you can switch to an **untrusted**, **but encrypted** connection:

Use the untrusted, encrypted connection

Users can click Use the untrusted, encrypted connection to use the HTTPS connection.

Warning: It is important to understand the risks associated with using an untrusted self-signed certificate. The browser warnings encountered while using a self-signed certificate could also indicate that the server has been compromised or hijacked by a third party. To avoid the risk of conditioning users to ignore important security warnings, follow the steps in the next section to enable remote clients to trust the selfsigned certificate.



Using a Self-Signed Certificate

If you choose to use a self-signed certificate with the Historian, you are responsible for configuring all clients to trust that certificate. Clients that haven't trusted the certificate see a security warning in their browser.

For example, if you configure your Historian using a self-signed certificate, users connecting with the Google Chrome browser see a warning message similar to the following:



Your connection is not private

Attackers might be trying to steal your information from from (for example, passwords, messages, or credit cards). Learn more
NET::ERR_CERT_AUTHORITY_INVALID
Hide advanced
Back to safety
This server could not prove that it is the safety is security certificate is not trusted by
your computer's operating system. This may be caused by a misconfiguration or an
attacker intercepting your connection.

Proceed to (unsafe)

Enabling Trust for a Self-Signed Certificate

A self-signed certificate needs to be "trusted" for the certificate to work without warnings when you access AVEVA Historian Client Web in your browser. Trusting the certificate involves two steps:

- 1. Acquire a copy of the certificate.
- 2. Install the certificate into the trusted root certificate store.

Acquiring a Copy of the Self-Signed Certificate

Before you can trust a self-signed certificate, you need a copy of the certificate on your system. If you already have a copy of the certificate, proceed to <u>Trusting a Self-Signed Certificate</u>.

To obtain a copy of the self-signed certificate:

- 1. In your browser, browse to the AVEVA Historian Client Web URL.
- 2. In the address bar, click on the warning message indicating your connection is not secure.





Attackers might be trying to steal your information from from (for example, passwords, messages, or credit cards). Learn more

NET::ERR_CERT_AUTHORITY_INVALID

3. Click Certificate (Invalid). The Certificate details dialog displays:

Certificate Information This CA Root certificate is not trusted. To enable trust, install this certificate in the Trusted Root Certification Authorities store. Issued to: Issued to: Valid from 4/7/2021 to 4/8/2026 Issuer Statement	General	Details Cert	ification Path				
This CA Root certificate is not trusted. To enable trust, install this certificate in the Trusted Root Certification Authorities store.	8	Certificat	e Informati	on			
Issued to: Issued by: Valid from 4/7/2021 to 4/8/2026	This inst Aut	CA Root cer all this certif horities stor	tificate is n ìcate in the e.	ot truste Trusted	d. To en Root Ce	able trust rtification	i i
Issued to: Issued by: Valid from 4/7/2021 to 4/8/2026							
Issued to: Issued by: Valid from 4/7/2021 to 4/8/2026 Issuer Statement							
Issued by: Valid from 4/7/2021 to 4/8/2026 Issuer Statement		Issued to:	10 A A			1	
Valid from 4/7/2021 to 4/8/2026 Issuer Statement		Issued by:	10.0				
Issuer Statement		Valid from	4/7/2021 to	4/8/2026	5		
Issuer Statement							
						Issuer Sta	tement
						_	

4. To trust the certificate, first you must save a copy. Select the **Details** tab.



🛺 Certificate	×
General Details Certification Path	
Show: <all></all>	~
Field Field Field Serial number Signature algorithm Fisuer Valid from Valid to Subject	Value V3 sha512RSA sha512 Wednesday, April 7, 2021 8:1 Wednesday, April 8, 2026 8:1
Ec	it Properties Copy to File
	ОК

5. Click Copy to File.... The Certificate Export Wizard displays:

🗧 🍠 Certificate Export Wizard

×

,	Welcome to the Certificate Export Wizard
1 li	This wizard helps you copy certificates, certificate trust lists and certificate revocation sts from a certificate store to your disk.
a c	A certificate, which is issued by a certification authority, is a confirmation of your identity and contains information used to protect data or to establish secure network connections. A certificate store is the system area where certificates are kept.
1	Fo continue, click Next.
	Next Cancel
Click Ne	ext.

6. Select DER encoded binary X.509 (.CER) as the export file format:



← 😺 Certificate Export Wizard

Certificates can be exported in a variety of file formats.	
Select the format you want to use:	
DER encoded binary X.509 (.CER)	
O Base-64 encoded X.509 (.CER)	
Cryptographic Message Syntax Standard - PKCS #7 Certificates (.P7B)	
 Personal Information Exchange - PKCS #12 (.PFX) Include all certificates in the certification path if possible 	
Delete the private key if the export is successful	
Enable certificate privacy	
O Microsoft Serialized Certificate Store (.SST)	
Next C	ancel
k Next	

7. Click Browse... and choose a location to save the exported certificate.

Specify the name of	of the file you want to export	
File name:		
C:\Users\	Documents \exported_certificate.c	Browse

8. Click **Finish** to export the certificate to the selected file:



🔶 🌛 Certificate Export Wizard

Completing the Certificate Export Wizard

You have successfully completed the Certificate Export wizard.

File Name			
Export Keys	No		
Include all certificates in the certification path	No		
File Format	DER Encoded Bina	ry X.509 (*.cer)	
<			>

Trusting a Self-Signed Certificate

If the AVEVA Historian is configured with a self-signed certificate for TLS encryption, the certificate needs to be trusted on all client machines to avoid warning messages while using AVEVA Historian Client Web. To accomplish this, install the certificate into the trusted root certificate store on each client machine.

To install a self-signed certificate into the trusted root certificate store:

1. Locate and open the certificate file in Windows Explorer. The Certificate dialog displays:



💀 Certificate	×
General Details Certification Path	
Certificate Information	_
This CA Root certificate is not trusted. To enable trust, install this certificate in the Trusted Root Certification Authorities store.	
	_
Issued to:	
Issued by:	
Valid from 4/7/2021 to 4/8/2026	
Install Certificate	1
OK	

🔶 🛷 Certificate Import Wizard

2. Select Install Certificate.... The Certificate Import Wizard displays:

n authority, is a confirm ta or to establish secure n area where certificate	ation of your identity network s are kept.
Г	Next Cancel
3	ata or to establish secure m area where certificate

3. Select **Current User** to install the certificate for only the current user, or **Local Machine** to install the certificate for all users on this system.

 \times

Note: The **Local Machine** option requires administrative access to the system. If you do not have administrative access, select **Current User**.



Click Next. The Certificate Store dialog displays:

ertificate Certifi	Store ate stores are system	n areas where ce	tificates are kept.		
Windo the ce	ws can automatically s tificate.	elect a certificate	e store, or you car	n specify	a location for
0	Automatically select th	ne certificate stor	e based on the ty	pe of cer	tificate
۲	Place all certificates in	the following sto	re		
	Certificate store:				
	Trusted Root Certific	ation Authorities	i i		Browse

4. Select Place all certificates in the following store. Click Browse... and select Trusted Root Certification Authorities as the Certificate store.

Cancel

Next

Finish

Cancel

5. Click Next. The Completing the Certificate Import Wizard dialog displays:

←	Certificate Import Wizard		×
	Completing the Certific	ate Import Wizard	
	The certificate will be imported after y	you dick Finish.	
	You have specified the following setti	ngs:	
	Certificate Store Selected by User Content	Trusted Root Certification Authorities Certificate	
	\triangleright		



6. Click Finish to complete the Certificate Import Wizard. A security warning displays:



Click Yes to acknowledge the warning. The certificate is now trusted on your machine.

AVEVA Enterprise License Server Configuration

Detailed information about configuring the AVEVA Enterprise License Server is contained in the AVEVA Enterprise License Platform Guide. This guide can be accessed from the AVEVA Enterprise License Manager (see License Installation and Activation for additional information). The basic steps to configure the location of the AVEVA Enterprise License Server are:

- 1. In the left pane, select AVEVA Enterprise License Server. Then, in the right pane enter:
 - **Primary Server Name:** if the License Server is not installed on the local node, enter the License Server name, or select a server name from the drop down list of previously-configured License Servers (if any).
 - Server Port: default is 55555.
 - Agent Port: default is 59200.

Note: To see if the license server can be found after entering the Server Name and Port, you can press **Test Connection**.

- **Backup:** If you have configured a backup server (secondary server), select the checkbox to enable backup. Then, enter the secondary server name.
- 2. Press the **Configure** button.



eServer01
Test Connection
5

Note: If you change a license server name after configuring it, you are prompted to release licenses from the old server name.

3. Select the next item in the left pane that requires configuration. When all required items have been configured, press the **Close** button to complete installation. See <u>System Restart after Configuration</u>.

AVEVA System Monitor Configuration

The AVEVA System Monitor contains two configuration items:

- System Monitor Manager: The System Monitor Manager configuration item specifies the name of the System Monitor Manager node. By default, the System Monitor Manager is selected for installation on the Galaxy Repository node, but you have to configure the name of the System Monitor Manager on each node in the System Platform topology. This allows the System Monitor Agent, which is automatically installed on each System Platform node, to communicate with the System Monitor Manager node. There should be only one System Monitor Manager node in a System Platform topology. See <u>AVEVA System Monitor Installation</u> for more information.
- Alert Email Server: The name of the email server and accounts that will be used to send and receive alerts from the System Monitor Manager. This is configured on the System Monitor Manager node only. You must have SQL Server administrator rights to configure the email server. The email server sends email alerts generated by the System Monitor Manager to notify personnel that an issue has been detected and may require attention.





System Monitor Manager Configuration

By default, the System Monitor Manager is installed on the Galaxy Repository node. There should only be one System Monitor Manager per System Platform topology, and each node should be configured to point to it.

- 1. In the Configurator, select System Monitor Manager, under AVEVA System Monitor.
 - If the System Platform node does not include Historian or MES, the initial System Monitor Manager Configuration window contains a single field for the System Monitor Manager name (node name).
 - If the System Platform node includes Historian or MES, the initial System Monitor Manager
 Configuration window contains additional fields to define credentials for MES and/or the Historian.

Configurator		
<u>File</u> <u>H</u> elp		
Common Platform System Management Server Authentication Provider License Mode Industrial Graphics Server	System Monitor Manager Configuration Specify where System Monitor Manager Address in the textbox. Note: We recommend using a Machine	is installed. You can provide a Machine Name or an IP Name because IP Address is not supported for secure
Client Settings Authentication Settings AVEVA Historian Server Security	System Monitor Manager Name	SystemMonitor
Search Reporting AVEVA Enterprise Licensing Platform AVEVA Setterprise License Server AVEVA Setter Monitor		
System Monitor Manager Alert Email Server		
	Advanced	Test Connection
	Configuration Messages	
	Successfully created the tag extended prop Successfully created the save content searc	berty search source. ch source.
	Successfully created the InTouch Web sour Successfully started the Wonderware Histo Successfully completed the search configur	ce. rian Search Indexer service. ration.
(Initialize done Configuring Historian Extension	
Refresh All Me	essages	Configure <u>C</u> lose

 In the System Monitor Manager Name field, enter either the computer name (preferred) or IP address of the node that will act as the System Monitor Manager. If you are configuring the current node as the System Monitor Manager, enter its name or IP address. If you have configured secure communications for the Common Platform, the machine name must be used (IP address is not supported for secure communications). See the AVEVA System Monitor User Guide for additional information.

Note: TCP/IP is used for communications between System Monitor Agents and the System Monitor Manager. Use the **Advanced** settings configuration dialog to configure the TCP/IP port numbers. See <u>Advanced System</u> <u>Monitor Configuration</u> for additional information.

3. If either Historian or MES is installed on the node, the Configurator detects the installation. It allows you to specify credentials for these programs to use to increase security. If MES or Historian is not installed, credential fields are not displayed and you can skip this step.



• If MES is installed on the node: To enable secure communication between MES and the System Monitor Manager, select the checkbox next to "Enter the MES credentials." If you do not select the checkbox, communication between MES and the System Monitor Manager is unsecured.

If you selected the checkbox, enter the user name and password of a configured MES user. The System Monitor Manager uses the configured user to communicate with MES.

 If the Historian is installed on the node: To enable secure communication between the Historian and the System Monitor Manager, select the checkbox next to "Enter the Historian credentials." If you do not select the checkbox, communication between the Historian and the System Monitor Manager is unsecured.

If you selected the checkbox, enter the user name and password that was configured for the **Network Account**. The System Monitor Manager uses the Network Account to communicate with the Historian. See <u>Network Account</u> for more information.

- 4. You can use the **Test Connection** button to check that the node you are configuring can reach the System Monitor Manager node.
- 5. Press the **Configure** button.
- 6. Select the next item in the left pane that requires configuration. When all required items have been configured, press the **Close** button to complete installation. See <u>System Restart after Configuration</u>.

Email Server Configuration

Configuring an Alert Email Server is optional. This procedure establishes an existing email server that the System Monitor Manager can use to send alerts. This is configured on the System Monitor Manager node only.

Note: You must have SQL Server sysadmin rights to configure the email server. No warning will be displayed, but without the proper user rights, configuration changes you make to the Alert Email Server in the Configurator will not be accepted.

1. In the Configurator, select Alert Email Server, under AVEVA System Monitor.





Configurator		- ¤ x		
<u>F</u> ile <u>H</u> elp				
Common Platform System Management Server Authentication Provider Cicense Mode Industrial Graphics Server Client Settings Authentication Settings AVEVA Historian Server	Email Server Configuration (O To receive email alerts from Mail Transport Protocol) em details. You can enter the details no Manager web interface. Enter Email server details Enter Email server details	ptional) AVEVA System Monitor, we need information about your SMTP (Simple ail server. You may need to consult with your administrator to get these w in the form below, or enter them later through the System Monitor s later, in the System Monitor Manager web interface		
Security Search Reporting AVEVA Enterprise Licensing Platform	SMTP Server Name or <u>I</u> P SMTP Server <u>P</u> ort	https://AVEVA.SystemPlatform.com 25		
AVEVA Enterprise License Server AVEVA System Monitor System Monitor Manager	SMTP Server <u>S</u> ecured	○ Yes ● No alert@systemplatform.com		
Alert Email Server	Default Recipient Email ID operator1@systemplatform.com;supervisor@systemplatform.c			
	Note: Enable Force Protoc	ol Encryption for SQL Server to avoid information disclosure.		
	Configuration Messages			
< >>	Successfully started the Wonde Successfully completed the sea Initialize done Configuring Historian Extension Extension Configuration Compl Server to get the new extension Configuring license server	rware Historian Search Indexer service. rch configuration. eted. Please restart Visual Studio Report Designer / SQL Reporting n loaded properly.		
Refresh All Me	issages	Configure Close		

- 2. Select one of the email alert details options.
 - To skip email server configuration, choose the option to enter email server details in the System Monitor Manager web interface.
 - To configure the email server, choose the option to "Enter Email server details now."
- 3. In the SMTP Server Name or IP field, enter either the computer name or IP address of the email server to be used for System Monitor alerts.
- 4. In the SMTP Server Port field, enter the port number of the email server (default: 25).
 - Use port number 25 for an unsecured SMTP server.
 - Use port number 465 for a secured SMTP server.

See the AVEVA System Monitor User Guide for additional configuration information.

- 5. In the SMTP Server Secured field, enter yes if the server is secured, or no if it is not.
- 6. If you are using a **secured** email server, enter the user name and password to access the server. The user name and password field are only applicable to a secured email server.
- 7. In the **From Email ID** field, enter the email address that will be used to send system alerts from the System Monitor.
- 8. In the **Default Recipient Email ID** field, enter the email address(es) that will receive system alerts from the System Monitor.



- 9. Press the Configure button.
- **10.** Select the next item in the left pane that requires configuration. When all required items have been configured, press the **Close** button to complete installation. See <u>System Restart after Configuration</u>.

Advanced System Monitor Configuration

An instance of the System Monitor Agent is installed on every node. Each agent communicates with the System Monitor Manager through TCP/IP and uses the Common Platform settings. Each System Monitor Agent must use the same port number that was configured for the System Monitor Management Server. See <u>Common Platform</u> for additional information.

If you have changed the default port settings for the System Management Server, use the **Advanced Configuration** settings to configure the TCP/IP port numbers for the System Monitor.

To configure the System Monitor Manager TCP/IP Port Numbers

Note: Configure the System Management Server before you configure the System Monitor Manager ports.

- 1. In the Configurator, select the System Monitor Manager entry, under AVEVA System Monitor.
- 2. Click the Advanced button. The Advanced Configuration dialog window opens.

System Monito ports.	or Agents communicate with the System Monitor Manager through TCP/I
When connect Management S the port specif on the machine	ed to a System Management Server (see the "Common Platform / Systen Server" plug-in), communications will be encrypted. The port used will be ied in the "Advanced" tab of the System Management Server configurato e where System Monitor Manager is installed.
You must spec Monitor Mana configurator pl	ify the same port number on all nodes that point to the same System ger. Specify the port in the Advanced tab of the System Monitor Manage lug-in on each node.
You must spec Monitor Mana configurator pl HTTP Port	ify the same port number on all nodes that point to the same System ger. Specify the port in the Advanced tab of the System Monitor Manage lug-in on each node.
You must spec Monitor Manage configurator pl HTTP Port HTTPS Port	ify the same port number on all nodes that point to the same System ger. Specify the port in the Advanced tab of the System Monitor Manage lug-in on each node.

- 3. Set the port number. Unless you changed default port numbers, no changes should be needed.
 - If System Platform is configured to use a secure mode of operations, that is, if the System Management Server option is configured, set the SSL port to the same number that was configured for Common Platform communications. The default SSL port is 443.
 - If security is not configured for System Platform, that is, if no System Management Server option is configured, set the HTTP port to the same number that was configured for Common Platform communications. The default HTTP port is 80.
- 4. Press OK, and then Close to exit Advanced Configuration.
- 5. Select the next item in the left pane that requires configuration. When all required items have been configured, press the **Close** button to complete installation. See <u>System Restart after Configuration</u>.



System Restart after Configuration

When you have configured all the listed components, click **Close**. The system will prompt you to restart. You can restart now or later.



Note: The installed programs may not function properly until you restart the system.

After the system restarts, and before you start using System Platform, make sure that you have activated your product licenses. See <u>License Installation and Activation</u>.



Chapter 4

Upgrading, Modifying, and Repairing System Platform

Upgrade to System Platform 2023: You can upgrade to System Platform 2023 from System Platform 2017 or newer. If you running a version older than System Platform 2017, you must perform an intermediate upgrade to a version that allows a direct upgrade, and then upgrade to System Platform 2023.

Upgrade to System Platform Enterprise 2023: You can upgrade to System Platform Enterprise 2023 from System Platform 2020 R2 SP1 only.

Migration of Application Server galaxies is supported from all versions, beginning with 4.5, and includes System Platform 2012 and later.

Note: System Platform 2020 R2 Controlled Releases 1 and 2 (CR1 and CR2) cannot be upgraded or migrated to System Platform 2023 or System Platform Enterprise 2023.

The upgrade process lets you upgrade only components that were previously installed. You cannot choose to add components that were not already installed, and you cannot deselect components. That is, if a newer version of a component is included on the installation DVD, the previously installed component is automatically upgraded.

After the upgrade is complete, you can add new components or remove existing components, as needed.

Important Upgrade Information

- 64-bit operating system required: A 64-bit operating system is required to install System Platform 2023.
- **64-bit SQL Server required:** For components that require SQL Server, such as Application Server and Historian, you must have a 64-bit version of SQL Server installed.
- .NET Framework: System Platform 2023 requires .NET Framework 4.8. If your system does not have this version or a newer version installed, the .NET Framework will be installed prior to product installation. A restart may be required, after which setup.exe will resume automatically. See <u>System Platform Prerequisites</u> for additional information.
- Licensing Change: If you are upgrading from System Platform 2014 R2 SP1, you will be changing to the new licensing system. This new "Activated License System" requires a License Server to be hosted on a machine that can be accessed by all nodes in the system. Additional license servers can be installed for more granular licensing management or redundancy.

Since the License Server is a new component, it is not added during the upgrade process. Upgrade the Galaxy Repository node first, and then use the **Modify** workflow to add the License Server after the node has been upgraded. See License Installation and Activation for additional information.



Only one License Server is required per overall system.

Note: The Galaxy Repository node is the default installation location for the License Server. You can, however, select a different node, or install the License Server on a standalone node, depending on your system size and architecture.

• Network Account: In System Platform 2017 Update 2 and prior releases, the Network Account (previously called the ArchestrA User) was a member of the system Administrators group. Starting with System Platform 2017 Update 3, the Network Account was removed from the Administrators group to enhance system security.

When you upgrade from System Platform 2017 Update 2 or an earlier version, a security warning asks if you want to remove the Network Account from the Administrators group. This is the best option for security. However, you can leave the Network Account as a system administrator, if the account is used by another application and if removing administrator rights will affect that application.

• AVEVA System Monitor: The System Monitor Manager tracks the availability of the License Server and provides email notification of its status to ensure uninterrupted system operations. A System Monitor agent, also called the Sentinel Agent, is installed on each node and communicates with the System Monitor Manager if there is an issue with the connection between the System Platform node and the License Server.

The System Monitor Manager is not automatically added during the upgrade process. To add the System Monitor Manager, upgrade the Galaxy Repository node first, and then use the **Modify** workflow to add the System Monitor Manager when the upgrade completes. The System Monitor agent is automatically added to each upgraded node. Configure the System Monitor agent on each remote node to point to the System Monitor Manager. See <u>AVEVA System Monitor Installation</u> for additional information.

Only one System Monitor Manager is required per overall system.

- InTouch Access Anywhere: If you plan to upgrade System Platform on a computer that has InTouch Access Anywhere Server or InTouch Access Anywhere Gateway installed, you must first uninstall the InTouch Access Anywhere Server or Gateway. Then, upgrade System Platform and finally, reinstall InTouch Access Anywhere. Note that the uninstall/reinstall process normally takes only several minutes.
- **Common Platform:** The System Management Server, a security component, was added for System Platform 2017 Update 3. If you are upgrading from a prior version that did not have the System Management Server, it is automatically installed on the GR node when you upgrade to System Platform 2023. There should be only one System Management Server in your System Platform topology, and every node should be configured to point to it. See <u>Common Platform</u> for additional information. If some nodes will not be upgraded, communication with non-upgraded nodes will continue to use legacy communication protocols.

In multi-galaxy environments, configure only one GR node as the System Management Server, and configure the other nodes to point to it.

About the Modify Workflow

The upgrade process can only upgrade System Platform components that are already installed on your system. Since upgrading may introduce new components that were not part of prior releases, you need to run setup.exe and launch the **Modify** option to install new components that may not have been available in prior versions of System Platform. The components that you may need to install through the **Modify** option include:

- AVEVA System Monitor Manager
- AVEVA License Server



To add components through the Modify option

- 1. Upgrade the node and configure it.
- 2. Run the installation program again from the installation DVD (setup.exe).
- 3. Select the Modify option.
- 4. Select the component(s) you want to install.

To upgrade a System Platform component

Note: Upgrade the GR node first, followed by remote IDE nodes, and then run-time nodes. See <u>Upgrading an</u> <u>IDE-only Node</u> and <u>Upgrading Run-Time Nodes</u> for additional information.

 Run setup.exe to start the set-up program. The startup screen appears, followed by the upgrade feature dialog box that lists any prerequisites and products and versions to be upgraded. If a new version of the .NET Framework is required, it is installed first and then setup resumes after a restart.

	The following products are installed on this computer
A	These products will be upgraded.
	Platform Common Services 4.5.1 4.5.20340.1
	AVEVA Historian 20.1.000
	AVEVA Historian Client Web 20.1.000
	AVEVA HistorianDocs 20.1.000
	AVEVA Historian Search 20.1.000
	AVEVA Historian Web Client Docs 20.1.000
	AVEVA Application Server 2020 R2 20.1.000
	AppServerDocs 20.1.000
	AVEVA OMI 20.1.000
	AVEVA OMI - Base Applications 20.1.000
	AVEVA OMI - Activity IDE Utility 20.1.000
	AVEVA OMI - Modern Editors 20.1.000
	AVEVA OMI - GR Development Toolkit 20.1.000
	AVEVA OMI - Mobile Access 20.1.000
	AVEVA OMI - SDK 20.1.000
	AVEVA OMI - LiveMode Base Applications 20.1.000
	Insight Publisher 4.2.000
	AVEVA InTouch HMI 20.1.000
	InTouchDocs 20.1.000
	Industrial Graphics Web Server 20.1.0
	InTouch HMI Common 20.1.000
	In TouchDataService 20.1.0.0
	InTouchOPCUAService 20.1.000
	AVEVA HistorianClient 20.1.000
	AVEVA HistorianClientDocs 20.1.000
	AVEVA Enterprise Licensing Platform(x86) 3.7.00000
	AVEVA Enterprise License Manager 3.7.00000
	AVEVA Enterprise License Server 3.7.00000
	AVEVA Enterprise Licensing Platform 3.7.00000
	AVEVA Communication Drivers Pack 2020 K2 7.2.0
	AVEVA Auto-Build Core 7.2.0
	AVEVA Core x64 1.1.0
	System Monitor Agent Install Manager 1.3 1.3.0.20340
	System Monitor Manager 1.3 1.3.0.20340
	System Monitor Documentation 1.3.0.20340

Note: You can only upgrade the products that are already installed, and you will not be able to install additional products during the upgrade process.

- 2. Confirm your operating system compatibility, then click Next to proceed.
- 3. A selection list of the products and components to be upgraded is shown. You cannot modify this list. Click **Next** to proceed.
- 4. Perform any recommended actions, such as backing up your galaxy, then click **Next** to proceed.



- 5. If required, OI servers are upgraded, then galaxy updates begin after the OI servers are upgraded. If prompted, click the **Stop Services** button to proceed.
- 6. After all services stop, click Next to proceed.
- 7. The list of product that will be upgraded is shown. Click **Upgrade** to begin upgrading your system.
- 8. After the installation is over, the **Configurator** starts. Some items that were previously configured retain their configurations, but you will need to reconfigure certain items including the System Management Server and the Historian (if present). See <u>Configuring System Platform Components</u> for more information.

Select **View Readme** for important information about System Platform 2023, including hardware and software requirements, new features, and known and resolved issues.

Note: You may see a **Cybersecurity Notice** that instances of a Microsoft XML processing library were found. For information on removing MSMXML 4.0, see the Microsoft Support web page: <u>https://support.microsoft.com/en-us/help/925672/ms06-061-security-update-for-microsoft-xml-core-</u> <u>services-4-0-sp2</u>

If you a galaxy is deployed, the Galaxy Patcher will start as soon as you connect to the galaxy from the System Platform IDE. Undeployed galaxies are not patched until you connect to them.

Important: Galaxy patching may take several minutes. Do not shut down the node while the patching operation is in progress.

AVEVA Application Server Upgrade

Direct upgrade to AVEVA Application Server 2023 is supported from Application Server 2017 and later versions.

About Upgrading Application Server

Important: Direct upgrade to Application Server 2023 is supported from Application Server 2017 and later. Your system must meet the minimum system requirements, including operating system version, SQL Server version, and .NET Framework version. Note that only 64-bit operating systems are supported. For more information, see <u>Supported Operating Systems for System Platform 2023</u>, the System Platform Readme, and the website.

Note: Users must belong to the OS group **aaConfigTools** to connect to a Galaxy from the IDE. Assign users to this group as needed through the **Windows** Users must belong to the OS group **aaConfigTools** to connect to a Galaxy from the IDE. Assign users to this group as needed through the **Windows Control Panel**.

Important Upgrade Information

- 64-bit operating system required: A 64-bit operating system is required to install System Platform 2023.
- 64-bit SQL Server required: For components that require SQL Server, such as Application Server and Historian, you must have a 64-bit version of SQL Server installed.
- .NET Framework: System Platform 2023 requires .NET Framework 4.8. If your system does not have this version or a newer version installed, the .NET Framework will be installed prior to product installation. A restart may be required, after which setup.exe will resume automatically. See <u>System Platform Prerequisites</u> for additional information.
- Licensing Change: If you are upgrading from System Platform 2014 R2 SP1, you will be changing to the new licensing system. This new "Activated License System" requires a License Server to be hosted on a machine



that can be accessed by all nodes in the system. Additional license servers can be installed for more granular licensing management or redundancy.

Since the License Server is a new component, it is not added during the upgrade process. Upgrade the Galaxy Repository node first, and then use the **Modify** workflow to add the License Server after the node has been upgraded. See License Installation and Activation for additional information.

Only one License Server is required per overall system.

Note: The Galaxy Repository node is the default installation location for the License Server. You can, however, select a different node, or install the License Server on a standalone node, depending on your system size and architecture.

• Network Account: In System Platform 2017 Update 2 and prior releases, the Network Account (previously called the ArchestrA User) was a member of the system Administrators group. Starting with System Platform 2017 Update 3, the Network Account was removed from the Administrators group to enhance system security.

When you upgrade from System Platform 2017 Update 2 or an earlier version, a security warning asks if you want to remove the Network Account from the Administrators group. This is the best option for security. However, you can leave the Network Account as a system administrator, if the account is used by another application and if removing administrator rights will affect that application.

• AVEVA System Monitor: The System Monitor Manager tracks the availability of the License Server and provides email notification of its status to ensure uninterrupted system operations. A System Monitor agent, also called the Sentinel Agent, is installed on each node and communicates with the System Monitor Manager if there is an issue with the connection between the System Platform node and the License Server.

The System Monitor Manager is not automatically added during the upgrade process. To add the System Monitor Manager, upgrade the Galaxy Repository node first, and then use the **Modify** workflow to add the System Monitor Manager when the upgrade completes. The System Monitor agent is automatically added to each upgraded node. Configure the System Monitor agent on each remote node to point to the System Monitor Manager. See <u>AVEVA System Monitor Installation</u> for additional information.

Only one System Monitor Manager is required per overall system.

- InTouch Access Anywhere: If you plan to upgrade System Platform on a computer that has InTouch Access Anywhere Server or InTouch Access Anywhere Gateway installed, you must first uninstall the InTouch Access Anywhere Server or Gateway. Then, upgrade System Platform and finally, reinstall InTouch Access Anywhere. Note that the uninstall/reinstall process normally takes only several minutes.
- **Common Platform:** The System Management Server, a security component, was added for System Platform 2017 Update 3. If you are upgrading from a prior version that did not have the System Management Server, it is automatically installed on the GR node when you upgrade to System Platform 2023. There should be only one System Management Server in your System Platform topology, and every node should be configured to point to it. See <u>Common Platform</u> for additional information. If some nodes will not be upgraded, communication with non-upgraded nodes will continue to use legacy communication protocols.

In multi-galaxy environments, configure only one GR node as the System Management Server, and configure the other nodes to point to it.

About the Modify Workflow

The upgrade process can only upgrade System Platform components that are already installed on your system. Since upgrading may introduce new components that were not part of prior releases, you need to run setup.exe



and launch the **Modify** option to install new components that may not have been available in prior versions of System Platform. The components that you may need to install through the **Modify** option include:

- AVEVA System Monitor Manager
- AVEVA License Server

To add components through the Modify option

- 1. Upgrade the node and configure it.
- 2. Run the installation program again from the installation DVD (setup.exe).
- 3. Select the Modify option.
- 4. Select the component(s) you want to install.
- You can upgrade SQL Server after Application Server is installed. Refer to Microsoft's SQL Server resources for guidelines and procedures.

To upgrade SQL Server after Application Server is installed, we recommend that you undeploy any galaxies deployed on the relevant computer, and that you undeploy all Platform Common Services. For more information, see the *Application Server User Guide*.

You can upgrade the following Application Server components:

• Bootstrap

You will see a warning message if you attempt to upgrade a computer with a deployed WinPlatform. You have the choice to continue with the upgrade or to cancel. If you continue with the Bootstrap upgrade, the deployed WinPlatform object is removed from run time and upgraded.

If an InTouchViewApp instance is deployed for a managed InTouch application, the folder is undeployed and deleted. You are prompted to stop InTouch WindowViewer from running the managed application.

• IDE and Bootstrap

You will see a warning message if you attempt to upgrade a computer with a deployed WinPlatform. You have the choice to continue with the upgrade or to cancel. If you continue with the upgrade, the current IDE and Bootstrap are removed and the new versions are installed.

If an installed InTouchViewApp instance is deployed for a managed InTouch application, the folder is undeployed and deleted. You are prompted to stop InTouch WindowViewer from running the managed application.

• Galaxy Repository (GR) and Bootstrap

You will see a warning message if you attempt to upgrade a computer with a deployed WinPlatform or a client application is connected to the GR node. You can choose to continue with the upgrade or to cancel. If you continue, the components are removed and upgraded.

Upgraded IDE/Client nodes cannot connect to a non-upgraded GR node. The GR node is undeployed before it is upgraded.

• IDE, GR, and Bootstrap

A warning message is displayed if you attempt to upgrade a computer with a deployed WinPlatform or if a client application is connected to the GR node. You can choose to continue with the upgrade or to cancel. If you continue, all components are removed and upgraded.

• Run-time node



Upgrading the Bootstrap on any computer removes the running WinPlatform and AppEngine. Both of these system objects are marked as undeployed if they are running on any Galaxy node.

Note: No system objects are removed on non-GR nodes when migrating from earlier versions of Application Server.

If a remote node is disconnected from the GR node, or if you upgrade the remote node before you upgrade the GR node, the remote Platform is not marked as undeployed. You must undeploy and redeploy the Platform.

The run-time functionality of Application Server continues throughout the upgrade process, except during a runtime node upgrade. Configuration, however, must be done using components that are at the same version level. For example, you cannot use the Galaxy Browser in the InTouch HMI on a non-upgraded node to view or select attributes from an upgraded Galaxy. You can, though, view or modify run-time data using an InTouch window or the Object Viewer.

Special considerations apply if you are upgrading both the Application Server and the Historian. For more information about upgrading the Historian, see <u>Upgrading from a Previous Version</u>.

Upgradeable Application Server Components

You can upgrade the following Application Server components:

• Bootstrap

You will see a warning message if you attempt to upgrade a computer with a deployed WinPlatform. You have the choice to continue with the upgrade or to cancel. If you continue with the Bootstrap upgrade, the deployed WinPlatform object is removed from run time and upgraded to version 2023.

If an InTouchViewApp instance is deployed for a managed InTouch application, the folder is undeployed and deleted. You are prompted to stop InTouch WindowViewer from running the managed application.

• IDE and Bootstrap

You will see a warning message if you attempt to upgrade a computer with a deployed WinPlatform. You have the choice to continue with the upgrade or to cancel. If you continue with the upgrade, the current IDE and Bootstrap are removed and the new versions are installed.

If an installed InTouchViewApp instance is deployed for a managed InTouch application, the folder is undeployed and deleted. You are prompted to stop InTouch WindowViewer from running the managed application.

• Galaxy Repository (GR) and Bootstrap

You will see a warning message if you attempt to upgrade a computer with a deployed WinPlatform or a client application is connected to the GR node. You can choose to continue with the upgrade or to cancel. If you continue, the components are removed and upgraded to version 2023.

Upgraded IDE/Client nodes cannot connect to a non-upgraded GR node. The GR node is undeployed before it is upgraded to Application Server 2023.

• IDE, GR, and Bootstrap

A warning message is displayed if you attempt to upgrade a computer with a deployed WinPlatform or if a client application is connected to the GR node. You can choose to continue with the upgrade or to cancel. If you continue, all components are removed and upgraded to version 2023.

Run-time node



Upgrading the Bootstrap on any computer removes the running WinPlatform and AppEngine. Both of these system objects are marked as undeployed if they are running on any Galaxy node.

Note: No system objects are removed on non-GR nodes when migrating from earlier versions of Application Server.

Windows Upgrades

After Application Server is installed, operating system migration is not supported. If a prior version of System Platform is installed, it must be uninstalled prior to upgrading the operating system.

SQL Server Upgrades

You can upgrade SQL Server after Application Server is installed, provided that the version of SQL Server that is installed is supported by Application Server. Refer to Microsoft's SQL Server resources for guidelines and procedures.

To upgrade SQL Server after Application Server is installed, we recommend that you undeploy any galaxies deployed on the relevant computer, and that you undeploy all Platform Common Services (previously called ASB services). For more information, see the *Application Server User Guide*.

Issues with Legacy Common Components

Application Server uses the latest version of the System Platform common components, which are installed to the following folder:

C:\Program Files (x86)\Common Files\ArchestrA

Legacy common components are installed to the following folder:

C:\Program Files (x86)\FactorySuite\Common

It is possible to install duplicate common components on a computer if you install an System Platform product that still uses the legacy common components after you install Application Server. Unexpected behavior can occur if duplicate common components are installed. The system components may not run properly, or may not run at all. Contact technical support for further assistance.

Basic Upgrade Sequence

Important: Back up the Galaxy before starting an upgrade. Also, upload any run-time changes for critical objects. You cannot upload any run-time change from non-upgraded nodes after you upgrade the system.

.NET Framework 4.8 is installed if it or a later version is not already present. You will be prompted to restart your computer after the .NET framework is installed.

The basic upgrade steps are:

1. Upgrade your hardware and prerequisite software such as the operating system or Microsoft SQL Server to the required versions. For information on hardware and software requirements, see the *System Platform Readme* file.

If you are upgrading the SQL Server database on the GR node, you must undeploy the GR node before starting the SQL Server upgrade.



- 2. Upgrade and configure the GR node. If you are upgrading from System Platform 2017 Update 2 or prior version, the Common Platform System Management Server is automatically installed on the GR node. For more information, see <u>Upgrading a Galaxy Repository Node</u>.
- 3. Upgrade and configure at least one IDE installation. If you upgrade the GR node, that IDE installation is upgraded. However, if you have any IDE-only nodes, you will have to upgrade them separately. For more information, see Upgrading an IDE-only Node.
- 4. **Migrate the Galaxy database.** Connect to the upgraded GR node from the upgraded IDE to migrate the galaxy to the new version automatically.
- 5. Deploy the GR Platform.
- 6. Upgrade and configure run-time nodes.
 - Upgrade non-redundant run-time nodes one at a time and redeploy them. For more information, see <u>Upgrading Run-Time Nodes</u>.
 - Upgrade redundant pairs one at a time. For more information, see Upgrading Redundant Pairs.

If you upgrade a remote Platform node before you migrate the Galaxy database, the remote Platform and hosted objects show the software upgrade pending icon after you migrate and deploy the Galaxy. To resolve this, undeploy and redeploy the remote Platform.

Important: After you have upgraded the GR node to Application Server 2023, you will not be able to deploy or undeploy from the GR node to non-upgraded remote nodes. Also, an IDE node that has been upgraded will not be able to connect to a GR node that has not been upgraded.

Note: As long as the operating system and SQL requirements are met, upgrade is supported.

Upgrading a Galaxy Repository Node

Important: Upgrade the GR node before upgrading other nodes.

When you upgrade a GR node, the local Platform and all hosted objects are undeployed and the database schema is migrated from the existing schema to the Application Server 2023 schema. Existing data from the GR is also migrated to the new schema.

You must upgrade all Application Server components (IDE, Bootstrap, and GR) to the same version that are installed on the GR node.

SQL Server Considerations

If the GR node contains less than the recommended RAM amount, system performance may be impacted as SQL Server will use more CPU to compensate for the lower amount of available memory. To improve system performance, set the SQL Server minimum memory (min server memory) to 1/3 of total physical memory. See "Allocating Galaxy Repository Node Memory" in the *Application Server User Guide* for additional information.

To upgrade the GR node

- 1. Review the status of objects deployed in the system and take appropriate action, if needed.
- 2. Run Setup.exe from the DVD. See <u>Upgrading</u>, <u>Modifying</u>, <u>and Repairing System Platform</u> for information about the installation process.</u>

Note: If you are upgrading from System Platform 2017 Update 2 or earlier, you can optionally add the **AVEVA System Monitor** at this point. Adding or deleting other components requires that you run the **Modify** workflow after the upgrade process is complete. Components that cannot be selected or deselected are



locked and can only be added or removed through the **Modify** workflow. See <u>Modifying an Installation</u> for more information.

3. When the **Installation Complete** dialog box appears, click **Configure** to continue. See <u>Configuring System</u> <u>Platform Components</u> for more information.

Important: Configure all GR nodes in multi-galaxy environments to point to a single System Management Server.

- 4. Close the **Configurator** and restart the computer to complete the upgrade. See <u>System Restart after</u> <u>Configuration</u>.
- 5. When the GR node has been upgraded, open the IDE and connect to the galaxy. The galaxy will be automatically migrated to System Platform 2023.

Note: If you are using a remote IDE node to connect to the galaxy, make sure that you have upgraded the IDE node before connecting to the galaxy.

Upgrading an IDE-only Node

Important: Upgrade the GR node before upgrading IDE-only nodes.

If you have IDE-only installations on nodes other than the GR node, you need to upgrade them separately.

Important: An IDE node that has been upgraded will not be able to connect to a GR node that has not been upgraded. Conversely, an IDE node that has not been upgraded cannot connect to a GR node that has been upgraded.

To upgrade an IDE-only node

1. Run Setup.exe from the DVD. See <u>Upgrading</u>, <u>Modifying</u>, <u>and Repairing System Platform</u> for information about the installation process.</u>

When the Installation Complete dialog box appears, click Configure to continue.

- 2. **Configuration:** Configure licensing, the System Management Server, and other installed features, such as the Historian and the InTouch Web Client.
 - Configure the System Management Server to point to the GR node. See <u>Common Platform</u> for additional information.
 - Under AVEVA System Monitor, enter the name of the node that has the System Monitor Manager installed. By default, it is installed on the GR node. See <u>Advanced System Monitor Configuration</u> for additional information.
- 3. When prompted, click **Restart Now** to complete the upgrade.

Migrating the Galaxy Database

To migrate the database:

- The IDE you use to migrate the database must be the current version.
- The GR node must already be upgraded to the current version.

Make sure that all connections to the Galaxy database are closed before migrating the database.



After you migrate the Galaxy, deployed objects on a non-upgraded node are marked with pending software upgrade status.

SQL Server Considerations

If the GR node contains less than the recommended RAM amount, system performance may be impacted as SQL Server will use more CPU to compensate for the lower amount of available memory. To improve system performance, set the SQL Server minimum memory (min server memory) to 1/3 of total physical memory. See "Allocating Galaxy Repository Node Memory" in the *Application Server User Guide* for additional information.

To migrate the Galaxy database

- 1. Start the IDE.
- 2. Connect to the Galaxy database to migrate. You are prompted to migrate it.
- 3. Follow the prompts to complete the migration.

Migration errors

Migration of a very large Galaxy may fail, with various (and sometimes misleading) warnings and errors displayed in the Logger. This is due to the Galaxy database transaction log expanding over its maximum allocated size.

Before making the changes described here, use the Event Viewer to check if the transaction log is full. If you confirm that the transaction log has exceeded its maximum file size restriction, remove the restriction as follows:

- 1. In SQL Server Management Studio, right click the **Galaxy database**, then click **Properties** on the shortcut menu.
- 2. In the Database Properties dialog, select the Files page.
- 3. Locate Log ... in the File Type column.
- 4. Click the ellipsis (...) button in the Autogrowth column on the same line.
- 5. In the **Change Autogrowth for Base_Application_Server_log** dialog, click the **Unrestricted File Growth** radio button under the **Maximum File Size** parameter, then click **OK**.
- 6. After the Galaxy migration is finished, repeat steps 1 through 5 to reinstate the file size limit on the transaction log.

Upgrading Run-Time Nodes

Important: Upgrade the GR node and any IDE-only nodes before upgrading run-time nodes.

After you upgrade the GR and IDE, all run-time nodes continue to run. This enables you to upgrade the run-time nodes individually when it is convenient.

Important: After you have upgraded the GR node, and you have migrated the galaxy, you will not be able to deploy or undeploy from the GR node to remote nodes which have not yet been upgraded. Once remote node upgrade is complete, deployment functionality returns. Also, an upgraded IDE node will not be able to connect to a GR node that has not been upgraded.

Upgrading a run-time node will remove (undeploy) any deployed Platforms from that node.

After you upgrade and then deploy a run-time node, it continues to function with other run-time nodes as long as the other nodes are the current version or from the previous version.

The run-time node does not function while you are upgrading it. You cannot roll back the upgrade.



After you upgrade the run-time node and all hosted objects, you need to redeploy the WinPlatform and all hosted objects to the node.

The GR node migration fails if the GR node is used as a run-time node for another GR.

To upgrade a run-time node

1. Run Setup.exe from the DVD. See <u>Upgrading</u>, <u>Modifying</u>, <u>and Repairing System Platform</u> for information about the installation process.</u>

When the Installation Complete dialog box appears, click Configure to continue.

- 2. **Configuration:** Configure licensing, the System Management Server, and other installed features, such as the Historian and the InTouch Web Client.
 - Configure the System Management Server to point to the GR node. See <u>Common Platform</u> for additional information.
 - Configure the AVEVA System Monitor to point to the System Monitor Manager node. By default, this is the GR node. See <u>Advanced System Monitor Configuration</u> for additional information.
- 3. When prompted, click **Restart Now** to complete the upgrade.

Upgrading Redundant Pairs

You can reduce plant down time by upgrading the two partner nodes in a redundant pair, one at a time.

Platforms hosting redundant pairs may be deployed even when a partner platform is not the same software version as the Galaxy Repository (GR) platform, or is in the Software Upgrade Pending (SUP) state.

When upgrading a redundant pair, we recommend upgrading the standby partner first. This way, only one failover of the redundant engines is needed, thus minimizing the period of time in which process data is not collected. After upgrading the first node, upgrade the second as soon as possible. When only one node is upgraded, backup and failover are not available. Both nodes must be at the same software version to enable redundancy.

The following table illustrates the workflow for upgrading a Galaxy Repository and one redundant pair, consisting of different nodes, from software version 1 (v1) to version 2 (v2). Action items are shaded. In this example, the redundant pair is comprised of Node B and Node C, as a redundant Application Engine is hosted by the platform on each node. Use the Platform Manager to determine which platform (P1 or P2) is hosting the active Application Engine. See the *Platform Manager User Guide* for additional information.

To upgrade a redundant pair

Follow the actions listed in the table to upgrade a GR node and redundant pair. These instructions assume an initial state where the primary engine (E1) is active. At the conclusion of this procedure, all three nodes are upgraded and the backup engine (E1b) is active.



	Node A		Node B		Node C	
	Galaxy Repository (GR) Platform 0 (P0)		Primary AppEngine (E1) Platform 1 (P1)		Backup AppEngine (E1b) Platform 2 (P2)	
Step	Action	Resulting State	Action	Resulting State	Action	Resulting State
	(Initial state)	Deployed.		E1 Deployed – Active.		E1b Deployed — Standby.
1	Upload run- time changes	Changes made at run- time now stored in the database.				
2	Upgrade (with AppServer deployed but shut down)	All objects on P0 become undeployed.				
3	Reboot when prompted	Software is now at v2.				
4	Open IDE and migrate database	Galaxy database now at v2. IDE shows P1 and P2 in SUP state.				
5	Optional: Open and migrate InTouch ViewApps	InTouch ViewApps now at v2.				



	Node A		Node B		Node C	
	Galaxy Repository (GR) Platform 0 (P0)		Primary AppEngine (E1) Platform 1 (P1)		Backup AppEngine (E1b) Platform 2 (P2)	
Step	Action	Resulting State	Action	Resulting State	Action	Resulting State
6	Cascade deploy P0	All objects on P0 are deployed.				
7					Upgrade (with AppServer deployed but shut down)	P2 and its hosted engines and objects become undeployed.
8				E1 becomes undeployed. E1 shows as undeployed, but objects under E1 show as deployed.	Cascade Deploy P2 Note: This action results in a brief downtime for objects on E1 and E1b as E1 becomes undeployed (a	E1b becomes active; hosted objects are now running under v2. Note: E1b does NOT start from the check- pointed state
					few seconds to a few minutes, depending on number of objects).	of non- upgraded E1.
9			Upgrade (with AppServer deployed but shut down)	P1 becomes undeployed.		



	Node A Galaxy Repository (GR) Platform 0 (P0)		Node B Primary AppEngine (E1) Platform 1 (P1)		Node C Backup AppEngine (E1b) Platform 2 (P2)	
Step	Action	Resulting State	Action	Resulting State	Action	Resulting State
10			Cascade deploy P1	E1 is deployed as part of P1 deployment. E1 starts as standby and fully syncs with active engine.		No down- time for objects on E1b as E1b continues to run as active.
	Final state	Deployed.		E1 Deployed – Standby.		E1b Deployed – Active.

After you have upgraded to System Platform 2023, you can enable CPU load balancing to improve the performance of redundant AppEngines during failover. See "Working with Redundancy" in the *Application Server User Guide* for additional information.

The following table describes the behaviors associated with specific upgrade actions and states.

Action or State	Behavior
Cascade deploy a Platform after upgrade	If the upgraded platform hosts a backup redundant engine with a partner in the SUP state, then during the deploy operation, it will extract the hosted objects from the partner and deploy them along with the backup redundant engine.
Deploy a redundant engine with a partner in the SUP state.	The deploy operation is always a Cascade Deploy.
Multi-selection for a cascade deployment includes a redundant engine with a partner in SUP state	The cascade deploy operation skips the redundant engine in SUP state and logs a message.



Action or State	Behavior
Select a backup redundant partner engine for deployment	The backup redundant engine extracts the hosted objects from the primary redundant engine and deploys them along with the backup redundant engine.
	The hosted objects are under the primary redundant engine on a partner platform which is in SUP state. The hosted objects will be forced to deploy with the newer software version during the deployment of the backup redundant engine.
	A dialog displays with the option to continue deployment or to cancel.
Partner engine is deployed but not reachable or not ready to sync.	Redundant engine deployment fails.
Partner engine has older software version.	The partner engine is detected and recognized as having an older software version. It is automatically stopped and unregistered.
	Primary engine transitions into Active – Partner not Upgraded redundancy status.
	Primary and backup partners cannot sync, but references to a redundant engine with this status—or with Active or Active – Standby not Available redundancy statuses—will resolve.
	Application Objects can be deployed to a redundant partner with Active – Partner Not Upgraded redundancy status.
	You will not be able to deploy the partner engine until you have upgraded it.

Upgrade Considerations for Multi-Galaxy Communication

Important: In multi-galaxy environments, add a System Management Server to only one GR node, and configure the other nodes to point to it. See <u>Common Platform</u> for additional information.

Setting up a multiple galaxy environment requires a unique name for each galaxy in the environment. This may require you to rename one or more galaxies if you plan to include galaxies with the same name in your multi-galaxy communication environment. We recommend performing all necessary renaming prior to upgrading System Platform. This will prepare your galaxies for use in a multi-galaxy environment without disrupting the upgrade workflow.

Important: It is very important that you follow the galaxy name change procedure provided in the following steps and in the *Application Server User Guide*. You must create a new galaxy with a new, unique name, from a backup .cab file rather than creating a galaxy and performing a restore of the backup .cab file.

For more information about creating and backing up galaxies, see "Getting Started with the IDE" and "Managing Galaxies" in the *Application Server User Guide*.


To rename a galaxy for use in a multi-galaxy environment

- 1. Select a galaxy with a duplicate name, undeploy it and back it up to create a .cab file.
- 2. Use the .cab file as a "template" by placing it in C:\Program Files (x86)\ArchestrA\Framework\Bin\BackupGalaxies.
- 3. Create a new galaxy with a new name, based on the backup .cab file. The name must be unique, not in use anywhere else in the multi-galaxy environment.
- 4. Repeat the preceding steps for each galaxy to be renamed with a unique name.
- 5. Redeploy each newly created galaxy.
- 6. Delete the original galaxy from the GR node.
- 7. Upgrade to Application Server 2023.

Your galaxy can now be configured for use in a multi-galaxy environment.

Modifying an Installation

You can change the System Platform components installed on your computer. You can add new components or remove the existing ones. You can modify any component of System Platform.

You must have the installation DVD inserted in the DVD-ROM drive before you can modify a program.

To modify an installation

- 1. Select the **Modify** option from the System Platform **Modify**, **Repair or Remove Installation** dialog box. You can open the dialog by doing either of the following:
 - Run Setup.exe from the System Platform installation DVD.
 - Navigate to Uninstall or Change a Program in the Windows Control Panel. Then, select any System Platform component and then click the Uninstall/Change button.

Note: The name of the **Uninstall/Change** option may vary depending on which Windows operating system is installed on your computer.



AVEVA System Platform 2023 Installation Modify, Repair, or Remove installation			
<u>M</u> odify	C.	Change which application features are installed. Displays Select Features dialog, which lets you configure individual features.	
<u>R</u> epair	*	Reinstall missing or corrupt files, registry keys, and shortcuts. Preferences stored in the registry may be reset to default values.	
Remove	Î	Uninstall AVEVA System Platform 2023 BETA	
View install guide		<u>N</u> ext > <u>C</u> ancel	

- 2. Click the **Modify** option, and then click **Next**.
- **3.** A message describing functional changes to System Platform installation behavior, and considerations for existing projects, is displayed. Read and acknowledge this message, then click **Next** to proceed. The list of System Platform components appears.

AVEVA System Platform 2023 Installation	
Please select which features you want to install, and specify the destination folder.	AVEVA
The following products and/or components will be installed.	
 AVEVA System Platform Out Of Support Redistributables (NOT RECOMMENDED) PCS - Runtime PCS - Service Repository Historian Historian Server IDAS Active Event Configuration Tools Historian Extensions Historian Client Web Historian Server Documentation PDF Documents 	
Destination Folder C:\Program Files (x86)	B <u>r</u> owse
View install guide < Back Next >	Cancel



- 4. Select or clear the components that you want to add or remove, and then click **Next**. The verify change dialog box appears.
- Click Modify. The selected components are added or removed. If the added components require configuration, the Configurator opens. If not, the complete modification dialog box appears. See <u>Configuring</u> <u>System Platform Components</u> for information about the Configurator.
- 6. Click Finish.

Note: The system may not prompt you to restart the system after Modify is successful. However, if you have added a new product or feature, a system restart is recommended.

Repairing an Installation

You can repair the installation of any System Platform component to fix missing or corrupt files, registry keys or shortcuts. You can also reset the registry key to the default value.

You must have the installation DVD inserted in the DVD-ROM drive before you can repair a System Platform installation.

To repair an installation

- 1. Select the **Repair** option from the System Platform **Modify, Repair or Remove Installation** dialog box. You can open the dialog by doing either of the following:
 - Run Setup.exe from the System Platform installation DVD.
 - Navigate to **Uninstall or Change a Program** in the Windows **Control Panel.** Then, select any System Platform component and then click the **Uninstall/Change** button.

Note: The name of the **Uninstall/Change** option may vary depending on which Windows operating system is installed on your computer.



AVEVA System Platform 2023 In	stallation	
Modify, Repair, or Re	emove	installation AVEVA
<u>M</u> odify	[]	Change which application features are installed. Displays Select Features dialog, which lets you configure individual features.
• <u>R</u> epair	*	Reinstall missing or corrupt files, registry keys, and shortcuts. Preferences stored in the registry may be reset to default values.
Remove		Uninstall AVEVA System Platform 2023
View install guide		<u>N</u> ext > <u>C</u> ancel

2. Select the Repair option, the click Next. The Confirm Repair dialog box appears.

AVEVA System Platform 2023 Installation	
Confirm Repair	AVEVA
Click Repair to repair the installation of AVEVA System Platform 2023	
Click Cancel to exit the wizard.	
<u>V</u> iew install guide < <u>B</u> ack <u>R</u> epair	Cancel

3. Click the **Repair** button. A message describing functional changes to System Platform installation behavior, and considerations for existing projects, is displayed. Read and acknowledge this message, then click **Next** to proceed.



4. If any System Platform services are running, the **Stop Running Services** dialog box appears. Click the **Stop Services** button to proceed.

The following services need to be stopped to pro-	ceed further.	
Service Name	Status	
ArchestrA Platform Install Manager	Running	
ArchestrA Watchdog Service	Running	
InTouch IData Service	Running	
AVEVA Historian Configuration	Running	
AVEVA Historian Client Access Point	Running	
AVEVA Historian System Driver	Running	
AVEVA Historian Event System	Running	
AVEVA Historian IOServer	Running	L
AVEVA Historian Manual Storage	Running	
AVEVA Historian Storage	Running	
AVEVA Historian Indexing	Running	
SQL Server (MSSQLSERVER)	Running	_
AV/EV/A Historian Search Indever	Rupping	

5. When all services stop, the **Next** button becomes active. Click the button to proceed.

The following services need to be stopped to pro	ceed further.	
Service Name	Status	/
ArchestrA Platform Install Manager	Stopped	
ArchestrA Watchdog Service	Stopped	
InTouch IData Service	Stopped	
AVEVA Historian Configuration	Stopped	1
AVEVA Historian Client Access Point	Stopped	
AVEVA Historian System Driver	Stopped	
AVEVA Historian Event System	Stopped	
AVEVA Historian IOServer	Stopped	
AVEVA Historian Manual Storage	Stopped	
AVEVA Historian Storage	Stopped	
AVEVA Historian Indexing	Stopped	
SQL Server (MSSQLSERVER)	Stopped	_
AVEVA Historian Search Indever	Stonned	

- 6. A progress bar is displayed as the system updates and repairs itself.
- 7. When the update has finished, the **Process Complete** dialog box appears. Click **Finish** to close the dialog box and complete the process.







Chapter 5

Uninstalling AVEVA System Platform

Uninstall a System Platform Component

You can uninstall any System Platform component that is installed on your computer.

To uninstall a System Platform component

- 1. Click the **Uninstall or Change a Program** option in Windows **Control Panel**. The list of software installed on your computer appears.
- 2. Select the System Platform component that you want to uninstall, and then click the Uninstall/Change button. The Modify, Repair or Remove Installation dialog box appears.

AVEVA System Platform 2023 Insta	allation	
Modify, Repair, or Ren	nove insta	Ilation AVEVA
<u>M</u> odify	Char Confi	ige which application features are installed. Displays Select Features dialog, which lets you igure individual features.
<u>R</u> epair	Rein: may	stall missing or corrupt files, registry keys, and shortcuts. Preferences stored in the registry be reset to default values.
Remove	Unin	stall AVEVA System Platform 2023
View install guide		<u>N</u> ext > <u>C</u> ancel

- 3. Click the Remove option, and then click Next. The confirmation dialog box appears.
- 4. Click Uninstall. The component is uninstalled and the complete uninstallation dialog box appears.
- 5. Click Finish.



Uninstall All Components

To uninstall AVEVA System Platform (remove all components)

Begin by opening the Windows **Control Panel**, and select **Programs and Features**. Uninstall components by selecting the component, and then click **Uninstall**. You must uninstall components in the following order:

Note: Ignore components that are listed below if they have not been installed on your system.

- 1. AVEVA Application Server
- 2. AVEVA InTouch HMI
- 3. InsightPublisher
- 4. AVEVA Historian
- 5. AVEVA Historian Client
- 6. AVEVA Communications Drivers Pack
- 7. AVEVA Platform Common Services
- 8. System Monitor Manager
- 9. System Monitor Agent Install Manager
- 10. AVEVA Enterprise License Manager
- 11. AVEVA Enterprise License Server
- 12. AVEVA Enterprise Licensing
- **13**. AVEVA Enterprise Licensing (x86)



Chapter 6

Security and Permissions

Enhanced Security for Connecting to a Galaxy

Users must belong to the OS group **aaConfigTools** to connect to a Galaxy from the IDE. Assign users to this group as needed through the **Windows Control Panel**.

Modifying the Network Account

After you install the System Platform, you can use the **Change Network Account** utility to change or recreate the Network Account. The **Change Network Account Utility** is a tool to manage credentials for node-to-node communications between System Platform computers. See <u>Network Account</u> for more information. A shortcut to the **Change Network Account** utility is created in the **AVEVA** folder after you install the System Platform products.

After opening the utility, select the domain name from the drop down menu if necessary. If the domain name does not appear on the drop down menu, enter the short domain name. Do not use the fully qualified domain name (FQDN). For example, use "DomainName" and not "DomainName.com" or "DomainName.local."

To run the utility from the command line, open the command window as Administrator. See <u>Change the Network</u> <u>Account from the CLI</u> for more information. You must have administrator privileges to run the utility through the GUI or from the command line.

Important: When you change or recreate the Network Account, a system restart is required. Close all applications and click OK to proceed.

Note: If you recreate the user account using the Change Network Account utility, the Microsoft Windows security component on the computer can take several minutes to update this information on the Galaxy Repository node. Until that occurs, inter-node communications may not function properly. Restarting the Galaxy Repository node updates this information immediately.

Change the Network Account from the CLI

You can run the **Change Network Account** utility from the command line by invoking aaAdminUser.exe. If you open aaAdminUser.exe from a command prompt without any flags, it opens the Change Network Account GUI. If you open aaAdminUser.exe with flags, it runs from the command prompt. Any changes require that you restart the computer to complete the change.

The default installed location for aaAdminUser.exe is: C:\Program Files (x86)\Common Files\ArchestrA.



Note: As is the case for the Change Network Account utility, you must have system administrator privileges to run aaAdminUser.exe from the command prompt.

Options you can specify with aaAdminUser.exe are:

Option	Flag	Example
Help	/h, -h, or /?	aaAdminUser.exe /h
User name	-u	aaAdminUser.exe -u user -p password
Account password	-р	aaAdminUser.exe -u user - p password
Create local account	-C	aaAdminUser.exe -u user -p password -c
Domain account	-d	aaAdminUser.exe -u user -p password -d example.com
Open GUI	<none></none>	When no flags are specified, the Change Network Account utility (GUI) opens

SQL Server Rights Requirements

When you install a Galaxy Repository or Historian node, the installation process creates or modifies new user groups, SQL Server logins, and a user account (Network Account). These provide support for Galaxy communications, system security, and connection to SQL Server. The new/modified SQL Server logins used by System Platform are:

- <NodeName>\aaAdministrators
- <NodeName>\aaGalaxyOwner
- NT AUTHORITY\SYSTEM

The Network Account, created when you installed Application Server, is required for Galaxy operations. This account:

- Is a member of the System Platform aaAdministrators group.
- Has one of the following SQL Server roles:
 - Has the SQL Server bulkadmin role, if Enhanced Security Mode is enabled (default).
 - Has the SQL Server sysadmin role, if Legacy Security Mode is enabled.

See <u>Network Account</u> and <u>Setting the SQL Server Security Mode</u> for additional information.

The automated process that creates the aaAdministrators group, Network Account, and aaGalaxyOwner user account also provides the rights required for operations within the GR. The aaAdministrators group, Network Account, and aaGalaxyOwner user account must all be present and enabled for Galaxy operations.

Caution: aaGalaxyOwner and ASBService are reserved OS user names. aaAdministrators and ASBSolution are reserved OS group names. Do not create users or groups with these names.

Note: The aaGalaxyOwner account is the owner (dbo) of all Galaxy databases in your system. It does not have a system login.



- If you accidentally delete the aaAdministrators group or the Network Account from the Windows operating system, you can run either the **Change Network Account** utility or the **SQL Access Configurator** to restore it. You can access these utilities from the **Start Menu**, under the **AVEVA** folder.
- If you accidentally delete the aaGalaxyOwner account from the Windows operating system, you must run the **SQL Access Configurator** to restore it.
- If you accidentally delete the aaAdministrators group, Network Account, or aaGalaxyOwner from the SQL Server security logons, you must run the SQL Access Configurator to restore it.

Setting the SQL Server Security Mode

If you are a SQL administrator, you can use the **SQL Access Configurator** to set user privileges within SQL Server for accessing and using Galaxy databases (the Galaxy Repository). A short cut to the **SQL Access Configurator** is created in the **AVEVA** folder when you install **Application Server** or **Historian**.

er operational nissions to perf changes.	access to Galaxies. Based on your security mode orm all normal operations. A valid SQL Server	9			
nd clicking (K will automatically restart the computer	r.			
eges (leverage	SQL SysAdmin privileges)				
 Enhanced Security Mode - Run with minimum SQL privileges for normal operations. While in this mode, attempting to restore applications from older versions of the software will require elevation of SQL Server privileges (SysAdmin) to complete the operation. Important: In order to properly leverage Enhanced Security Mode, the Archestrá User account cannot have been explicitly granted the fixed SQL Server SysAdmin role. 					
<u>U</u> ser Name					
<u>P</u> assword					
	Cancel				
	eges (leverage minimum SQL pilications from pilications from pilications from Enhanced Sec yranted the fixe Liser Name Eassword	eges (leverage SQL SysAdmin privileges) minimum SQL privileges for normal operations. pplications from older versions of the software will require min) to complete the operation. Enhanced Security Mode, the ArchestrA User account granted the fixed SQL Server SysAdmin role. User Name Bassword Cancel			

User privileges are determined by the security mode. Two security modes are available:

• Legacy Mode. Authenticated users have the sysadmin privilege and are not restricted from any SQL Server activity, including creating, modifying, and deleting any SQL Server database.

Select Legacy mode to ensure that users can perform all Galaxy operations. If users will frequently be restoring Galaxies created with previous versions of Application Server, this may be the preferred setting.

• Enhanced Security Mode. This is the default setting. This mode removes the sysadmin privilege from Application Server users, and retains only the minimum privileges needed for normal operations.

Select Enhanced Security mode for compliance with corporate or other IT security requirements or guidelines.

If you use Enhanced Security Mode, you may be prompted to provide SQL sysadmin user credentials when restoring a Galaxy that was created with an older version of Application Server. You do not need sysadmin credentials to restore Galaxies created with the current version of Application Server.

Enhanced Security Mode removes the SQL **sysadmin** role from, and adds the **bulkadmin** role to the following SQL logins:



- NTAUTHORITY\SYSTEM
- <NodeName>aaAdminstrators (local security group that contains the Network Account)

To change the SQL security mode with the SQL Access Configurator

WARNING! The SQL Access Configurator automatically restarts the computer to ensure system stability. If you press OK, you will not be able to cancel the restart.

- 1. Select the SQL Server security mode:
 - Legacy Mode.
 - Enhanced Security Mode (default).
- 2. Select the authentication type:
 - Windows authentication (default).
 - SQL Server authentication.
- 3. Provide SQL sysadmin login credentials (User Name and Password).
- 4. Click **OK**. The system will restart automatically.
- Optional: If you selected Enhanced Security Mode, open SQL Server Management Studio and look under Security\Logins. Check that the NTAUTHORITY\SYSTEM and <NodeName>aaAdminstrators logins do not have the sysadmin server role.

Note: The system performs a check prior to changing to Enhanced Security Mode. This is to ensure that at least one account will exist with the SQL sysadmin privilege after the change. If the system check determines that no accounts with the SQL sysadmin privilege will remain after changing modes, an error message will be displayed and security will remain in Legacy Mode.

Restoring Required SQL Server Accounts

If you delete the aaAdministrators group, Network Account, or the aaGalaxyOwner account, restore them by running the **SQL Access Configurator**. You do not have to do anything else to restore the missing group or account. The missing group or account is created automatically when you run the utility. Running the utility does force a system restart, however, even if you retain the same security configuration.

Setting the FIPS Security Policy Option

Application Server does not support the FIPS (Federal Information Processing Standards) security policy option in Microsoft Windows. The Federal Information Processing Standards are United States Government standards that provide a benchmark for implementing cryptographic software. If your system has FIPS enabled in the Local Security Policy settings, you should disable it. The security setting for FIPS is listed under Security Settings> Local Policies> Security Options> System cryptography, or as part of Group Policy.



Chapter 7

Configuring SQL Server

SQL Server Requirements

If required for the products/roles you are installing, and you will not be using the version of SQL Server Express supplied with System Platform, install Microsoft SQL Server before installing System Platform. It is important to take into consideration the requirements of the different versions of SQL Server. For detailed SQL Server installation instructions, refer to the Microsoft documentation and the AVEVA TechNote applicable to your version of SQL Server. available on the AVEVA Global Customer Support web site.

- Installing Microsoft SQL Server 2016 https://softwaresupportsp.aveva.com/#/okmimarticle/docid/tn000032384
- Installing Microsoft SQL Server 2019 <u>https://softwaresupportsp.aveva.com/#/okmimarticle/docid/tn000032660</u>

If no version of SQL Server is installed on your system when you install System Platform, and you install a product or role that includes either Historian Server or a Galaxy Repository, you can choose to allow System Platform to automatically install SQL Server 2019 Express Core as it installs other prerequisites.

Note: SQL Server Express is limited for use with small installations only (25,000 I/O per node or less). For information about the versions of SQL Server supported by Application Server and other System Platform products, see the *System Platform Readme*.

Supported SQL Server Versions

Install all cumulative updates for all versions of SQL Server.

- SQL Server Express 2016 SP3 (or SP3)-SSMSE (small systems only
- SQL Server 2016 Standard or Enterprise SP2
- SQL Server 2017 Express Core or Express with Advanced Tools (small systems only)
- SQL Server 2017 Standard or Enterprise
- [DEFAULT] SQL Server 2019 Express Core (small systems only)
- SQL Server 2019 Standard or Enterprise
- SQL Server 2022 Standard or Enterprise

For more information about specific requirements for SQL Server configuration, see <u>SQL Server Rights</u> <u>Requirements</u>, or see the Microsoft documentation available online.



- A supported version of SQL Server must be installed on the computer designated as the Galaxy Repository (GR) node before you install Application Server. If you select a product or role that requires the Galaxy Repository, and SQL Server is not installed on the computer, you have the option to install SQL Server Express Core 2019.
- The GR locks the SQL Server maximum memory usage to 65% of the computer's physical memory.
- TCP/IP must be enabled on the computer hosting a SQL Server database. The TCP/IP protocol setting can be verified from the SQL Server Network Configuration under SQL Server Configuration Manager. Do the following steps to enable TCP/IP.

To enable the TCP/IP protocol for the SQL Server database instance

- 1. Open the SQL Server Configuration Manager.
- 2. In the tree pane, click SQL Server Services.
- 3. If any services are displayed in the results pane, verify that each service under is in the Running state.

If a service is Stopped, right-click the name of the service, and click Start.

4. In the tree pane, click SQL Server Network Configuration to expand it, and then click Protocols for MSSQLServer/<InstanceName>.

If you specified the default instance during installation, the instance name will be **MSSQLSERVER**.

- 5. In the results pane, verify that each protocol is **Enabled**:
 - Shared Memory
 - Named Pipes
 - TCP/IP

If **Disabled** appears, right-click on the protocol name and enable it.

- 6. In the tree pane, click **SQL Native Client Configuration** to expand it, and then click **Client Protocols**.
- 7. In the results pane, verify that each client protocol is Enabled:
 - Shared Memory
 - Named Pipes
 - TCP/IP

If **Disabled** appears, right-click on the protocol name and enable it.

- 8. If you had to enable any services:
 - a. Start Task Manager.
 - b. Go to the Services tab.
 - c. Restart MSSQLServer/<InstanceName>.

Working with SQL Server Versions

The installation workflow will vary, depending on whether or not SQL Server is already installed. The version of SQL Server that is installed can also make a difference in the workflow. If SQL Server is not already installed, the System Platform installation program install SQL Server 2019 Express Core. This is adequate for small



configurations, but not for medium and large configurations. For these, install SQL Server before installing System Platform. The following workflow scenarios are described:

- SQL Server not found on node: small configuration
- SQL Server not found on node: medium and larger configurations
- Compatible version of SQL Server already installed
- New (untested) version of SQL Server already installed
- Incompatible version of SQL Server already installed

Note: Nodes are defined as follows: Small = up to 25,000 I/O per node; Medium = 25,000 to 50,000 I/O per node; Large = 50,000 to 400,000 I/O per node.

SQL Server not found on node: small configuration

If you install the Application Server Galaxy Repository and SQL Server is not found on the computer, SQL Server 2019 Express Core is installed as part of the installation process. This version of SQL Server is suited for small configurations, and is best for a single-node system. A small configuration is defined as one that has less than 25,000 I/O. See the *System Platform Readme* for additional information.

SQL Server not found on node: medium and larger configurations

For medium and larger systems, the following 64-bit versions of SQL Server are supported:

- SQL Server 2016 Standard or Enterprise SP2 (or SP2 plus all cumulative updates)
- SQL Server 2017 Standard or Enterprise with all cumulative updates
- SQL Server 2019 Standard or Enterprise Standard or Enterprise with all cumulative updates
- SQL Server 2022 Standard or Enterprise with all cumulative updates

See the System Platform Readme for additional information.

For more information about the comparative capabilities of SQL Server versions, see the following URL:

https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/sql/sql-server/editions-and-components-of-sql-server-version-15?view=sql-server-ver15

Compatible version of SQL Server already installed

If a compatible version of SQL Server is already installed, System Platform installation will continue without interruption (SQL Server 2019 Express Core is not installed).

New version of SQL Server already installed

If a new version of SQL Server is already installed that has not yet been fully tested with System Platform 2023 products, a warning is displayed stating that the installed SQL version has not yet been tested. You can proceed with the installation, but we recommend that you contact AVEVA Global Customer Support before proceeding to check if any issues have been found.



Incompatible version of SQL Server already installed

If an older version of SQL Server is already installed that is not supported with the current version of System Platform products, installation will stop and a warning will be displayed stating the SQL Server version is not compatible. You must upgrade to a supported version of SQL Server before you can resume installation.

Using a Non-Default Port for SQL Server

The default port for SQL Server is 1433. If you want to use a different port number, use **SQL Server Configuration Manager** to set the port number.

If you are using the SQLData object to store and retrieve data, you will need to enter the non-default SQL Server port number as you enter other database connection information. See the SQLData Object help file, available through the System Platform IDE, for additional information.

To change to a non-default SQL Server port number

- 1. If you are upgrading from a prior version of System Platform, upgrade all nodes. See <u>Basic Upgrade Sequence</u> for more information. If this is a new installation, continue to step 2.
- 2. Launch SQL Server Configuration Manager.
- 3. Select SQL Server Network Configuration, then select Protocols for MSSQLSERVER.
- 4. In the list of protocol names to the right, select and open TCP/IP Properties.



5. In the TCP/IP Addresses tab, scroll down to IPAII.



CP/I	P Pro	operties			?	×
Prote	ocol	IP Addresses				
	Enabl	led	No			
	IP Ac	ldress	10.228.9	98.227		
	TCP I	Dynamic Ports				
	TCP I	Port	1433			
Ξ	IP3					
	Activ	e	Yes			
	Enab	led	No			
	IP Ac	ldress	:1			
	TCP [Dynamic Ports				
	TCP Port		1433			
Ξ	IP4					
	Activ	e	Yes			
	Enabled		No			
IP Address		127.0.0.	1			
	TCP [Dynamic Ports				
	TCP Port		1433			
8	IPAII					
	TCP I	Dynamic Ports				
	TCP I	Port	1434			
тс	P Poi	t				
TCF	por	t				
		OK	Cancel	Apply		aln

- 6. Change the TCP Port number from 1433 to the desired number.
- 7. Click OK or Apply to commit the changes.
- 8. Reboot the GR node.

Setting a Windows Firewall Exception for the SQL Server Port

You will need to set a Windows Firewall exception for a non-default SQL Server port number if you are using a remote node. Without access through the firewall, remote nodes will be unable to connect to the database.

To allow access through the Windows Firewall

- 1. Open Allow an app through Windows Firewall.
- 2. Select SQLServer from the list of applications. Double click to open the Edit a Port window.
- 3. Change the port number to match the port number listed in **SQL Server Configuration Manager**.
- 4. Click **Network types...** and select the checkbox that matches the network type to which you are connected (typically Domain).



Chapter 8

AVEVA InTouch HMI Requirements and Prerequisites

You need to meet the requirements and prerequisites for products.

Installing OI Gateway and Upgrading from FS Gateway

Operations Integration Gateway (OI Gateway) is automatically installed as an InTouch component when InTouch is selected for installation. OI Gateway replaces Factory Suite (FS) Gateway, which was supplied with prior versions of System Platform. Like FS Gateway, OI Gateway acts as a communications protocol converter, provides OPC connectivity and also supports OPC UA connectivity. Default configurations for both OPC and OPC UA are included.

See the *Operations Integration Gateway Help* for information about connecting to OPC and OPC UA servers, as well as for information about linking clients and data sources that communicate using different protocols.

In addition to installing OI Gateway as part of installing InTouch, you can install OI Gateway as a stand-alone application. There are three common installation scenarios:

"Clean" System without OI Gateway or FS Gateway	Older version of Ol Gateway is installed	FS Gateway is installed
OI Gateway is installed as part of InTouch installation.	The System Platform installation program upgrades the existing OI Gateway version to the new version and exits. Restart the System Platform installation program after OI Gateway has been upgraded. This installs the remaining System Platform components, including InTouch.	The installation program removes FS Gateway, but saves the existing FS Gateway configuration. Two instances of OI Gateway are installed. The existing FS Gateway is replaced by the second OI Gateway instance, which uses the existing FS Gateway application name. After the upgrade to System Platform 2023 is complete, activate the instance that has replaced FS Gateway. There is no change in behavior for InTouch users that use the pre-existing OPC access name.



"Clean" System without Ol Gateway or FS Gateway	Older version of Ol Gateway is installed	FS Gateway is installed
		See <u>Compatibility with Existing FS</u> <u>Gateway Applications</u> .

Compatibility with Existing FS Gateway Applications

If you are upgrading from InTouch 2014 R2 SP1 where FSGateway has been installed, OI Gateway will continue to maintain the FSGateway application name in the Access Name definition. The application name is preserved to enhance compatibility with existing applications.

• If you had InTouch 2014 R2 SP1 installed previously, FS Gateway will appear in the Operations Control Management Console (OCMC) under **DAServer Manager**.



• After upgrading from InTouch 2014 R2 SP1, two new Gateway servers are installed. The first OI Gateway is installed under Operations Integration Supervisory Servers as OI.GATEWAY.n. A second instance replaces the existing FS Gateway instance, but preserves the existing configuration and name, even though FS Gateway has been deleted and the new OI Gateway has been installed in its place. Since the new gateway instance is in a deactivated state, you must activate it (select the instance, right-click, and select "Activate Server").

Note that the component names are changed from "FSGateway" to "Gateway." This does not affect references or change the behavior of the gateway.



File Action View Help		, ,		
 Archestra System Management Console (BLWIN10) Galaxy Database Manager Operations Integration Server Manager Default Group Local Operations Integration Supervisory Ser Wonderware - Gateway Wonderware - SIM 		Component Gateway Gateway [Shell] Original DAS Toolkit DASEngine PlughMQTT PlughOPC PlughODESL	Version 2017.0206.2228.1 1001.0013.0000.0000 0922.0000.0000.0000 1056.0534.0000.0000 1056.0283.0000.0000 1056.0283.0000.0000 1056.0283.0000.0000	Build Date February 6, 2017 February 6, 2017 February 1, 2017 February 23, 2017 February 23, 2017 February 23, 2017 February 23, 2017
 ArchestrA-FSGateway,3 Configuration OPC DeviceGroup Log Viewer Platform Manager 	Activate Serve Configure As S View Export List	r Service > >		
	Help			
		K		

OI Gateway Installation Scenarios

The following table shows the possible combinations for installing OI Gateway and System Platform. See the *System Platform Readme* and the *InTouch Readme* for information about upgrading and migrating to System Platform 2023 with InTouch HMI 2023 from earlier versions of InTouch.

I have	I want to		
	Install OI Gateway 3.0 SP2 Stand- alone	Install System Platform 2023 with InTouch and OI Gateway 3.0 SP2	
A clean system	 OI Gateway is preconfigured with a predefined OPC access Name. 	 OI Gateway is preconfigured with a predefined OPC access Name. 	
	• OI Gateway is installed as stand- alone product.	 OI Gateway is installed as a hidden feature. 	
	• OI Gateway appears in Uninstall/ Change Programs.	 InTouch appears in Uninstall/ Change Programs. 	



I have	I want to		
	Install OI Gateway 3.0 SP2 Stand- alone	Install System Platform 2023 with InTouch and OI Gateway 3.0 SP2	
FS Gateway 2.0.0 or previous installed (Stand-alone)	 Existing FS Gateway Configuration is retained. FS Gateway is upgraded to OI Gateway. OI Gateway appears in Uninstall/ Change Programs. 	 Existing FS Gateway Configuration is retained. InTouch is installed. OI Gateway is installed as a hidden feature. OI Gateway is upgraded. OI Gateway appears in Uninstall/ Change Programs. InTouch appears in Uninstall/ Change Programs. 	
InTouch 10.0.0 or previous installed	 OI Gateway is preconfigured with a predefined OPC access Name. OI Gateway is installed as stand- alone product. OI Gateway appears in Uninstall/ Change Programs. InTouch appears in Uninstall/ Change Programs. 	 OI Gateway is preconfigured with a predefined OPC access Name. OI Gateway is installed as a hidden feature. InTouch is upgraded. InTouch appears in Uninstall/ Change Programs. 	
FS Gateway 2.0.0 (Stand-alone) or previous and InTouch 10.0.0 or previous	 Existing FS Gateway Configuration is retained. FS Gateway is upgraded to OI Gateway. OI Gateway appears in Uninstall/ Change Programs. InTouch appears in Uninstall/ Change Programs. 	 Existing FS Gateway Configuration is retained. FS Gateway is upgraded to OI Gateway. InTouch is upgraded. OI Gateway appears in Uninstall/ Change Programs. InTouch appears in Uninstall/ Change Programs. 	



I have	I want to		
	Install OI Gateway 3.0 SP2 Stand- alone	Install System Platform 2023 with InTouch and OI Gateway 3.0 SP2	
FS Gateway 2.0.1 Stand-alone	 Existing FS Gateway Configuration is retained. 	 Existing FS Gateway Configuration is retained. 	
	 FS Gateway is upgraded to OI Gateway. 	 OI Gateway is installed as a hidden feature. 	
	• OI Gateway appears in Uninstall/	 InTouch is installed. 	
	Change Programs.	 OI Gateway appears in Uninstall/ Change Programs. 	
		 InTouch appears in Uninstall/ Change Programs. 	
System Platform 2012 with InTouch 10.5 and FS Gateway 2.0.1	 FS Gateway 2.0.1 must be manually uninstalled (after doing this, it is equivalent to installing OI Gateway on a clean system). 	 Existing FS Gateway Configuration is retained. OI Gateway is installed as a hidden feature. InTouch is upgraded. InTouch appears in Uninstall/ Change Programs. 	
FS Gateway 3.0.0 Stand-alone	 OI Gateway is preconfigured with a predefined OPC access Name. OI Gateway is installed as stand- alone product. OI Gateway appears in Uninstall/ Change Programs. 	 Existing FS Gateway Configuration is retained. InTouch is installed. OI Gateway is installed as a hidden feature. OI Gateway appears in Uninstall/ Change Programs. InTouch appears in Uninstall/ Change Programs. 	
System Platform 2012 R2 with InTouch 10.6 and FS Gateway 3.0.0	 Existing FS Gateway Configuration is retained. OI Gateway is installed as stand- alone product. OI Gateway appears in Uninstall/ Change Programs. InTouch appears in Uninstall/ Change Programs. 	 Existing FS Gateway Configuration is retained. InTouch is installed. OI Gateway is installed as a hidden feature. OI Gateway appears in Uninstall/ Change Programs. InTouch appears in Uninstall/ Change Programs. 	



Chapter 9

AVEVA Historian Server Requirements and Recommendations

For the AVEVA Historian to achieve maximum performance, make sure your hardware and software meet the following requirements. Because the Historian is a high-performance relational database, it is also important to size your system to handle the level of data that you expect to store.

The Historian is tightly integrated with Microsoft products, and a working knowledge of both Microsoft SQL Server and Microsoft Windows operating systems is required. For more information on Microsoft SQL Server or Windows operating systems, see your Microsoft documentation.

Server Requirements

The minimum hardware and software requirements for the Historian are based on the tag count and the anticipated data throughput rate. These requirements are divided into four levels, which are outlined in this section.

You need to ensure that the memory that SQL Server reserves for the Historian is adequate for the expected load. Based on your particular environment, you may need to adjust the SQL Server MemToLeave allocation. For more information on MemToLeave, see the Microsoft documentation.

You can install the Historian on operating systems that have the User Account Control (UAC) turned on.

If you are running the Historian on a virtual server, the historian must have an adequate CPU, adequate network memory, and disk I/O resources at all times. Overloading the virtual server leads to unpredictable behavior. See <u>System Sizing Guidelines</u> for general hardware requirements.

Operating Systems

Any supported 64-bit operating system. See the AVEVA Global Customer Support (GCS) Technology Matrix.

Microsoft SQL Server

For supported 64-bit Microsoft SQL Server versions, see the AVEVA GCS Technology Matrix.

Disk Space

- 300 MB of free disk space to install the Historian
- Appropriate space for history block storage. For more information, see <u>Disk Sizing and Data Storage</u>.



Level 1 Server - Hardware

A Level 1 server can handle a load of about 5,000 tags. For example, 2,600 analogs, 2,200 discretes, 300 strings, and 20 non-I/O Server (manual) tags.

When replicating to AVEVA Insight, each Level 1 server can support up to 15,000 tags and 5,000 values per second.

The requirements are:

- Processor:
 - Minimum: P4 3.2 GHz CPU
 - Recommended: dual-core CPU
- RAM:
 - Minimum: 2 GB
 - Recommended: 4 GB
- 100 Mbps network interface card (NIC)

Level 2 Server - Hardware

A Level 2 server can handle a load of about 100,000 tags, with 50% analog, 45% discrete, and 5% string tags. The requirements are:

- Processor:
 - Minimum: P4 3.0 GHz dual CPU
 - Recommended: quad-core CPU
- RAM:
 - Minimum: 4 GB
 - Recommended: 8 GB
- 1 Gbps network interface card (NIC)

Level 3 Server - Hardware

A Level 3 server can handle a load of 150,000 tags, with 50% analog, 45% discrete, and 5% string tags. The requirements are:

- Processor:
 - Minimum: P4 2.7 GHz Xeon quad CPU
 - Recommended: dual processor, quad-core CPUs
- RAM:
 - Minimum: 6 GB
 - Recommended: 12 GB
- 1 Gbps network interface card



Level 4 Server - Hardware

A Level 4 server can handle a load of 2,000,000 tags, with 50% analog, 45% discrete, and 5% string tags. The requirements are:

- Processor:
 - Recommended: two quad-core CPUs
- RAM:
 - Minimum: 24 GB
 - Recommended: 48 GB
- 1 Gbps network interface card

A performance report for different historian systems is provided in System Sizing Examples.

High Availability Support

The Historian provides built-in support for Stratus ft3500 fault-tolerant servers. Other high availability features include:

- Tiering using the "replication" functionality with a small "local" Historian on site that replicates to two "tier 2" Historians.
- Virtualization using HyperV or VMware high availability options with Historian running on a virtual machine. For more information, see the *System Platform in a Virtualized Environment Implementation Guide*.
- Redundancy the Application Server can send data to two Historians at once and maintains independent store-and-forward channels to each.

Requirements for Historian Management Tools

The management tools include the Historian Management Console and the Historian Database Export/Import Utility. If you are installing the tools on a remote computer, the following requirements apply:

- Any supported operating system. See the AVEVA Global Customer Support (GCS) Technology Matrix.
- Any supported browser. See the AVEVA GCS Technology Matrix.
- 20 MB of free disk space

Note: The Historian Data Importer is installed as part of the server installation.

Remote IDAS Requirements

A remote IDAS runs on all supported operating systems: domain member, stand-alone workstation, or server.

To determine the CPU and memory needed for a remote IDAS, use the same guidelines of the Historian computer. For more information, see <u>Server Requirements</u>.

The IDAS computer does not necessarily have to be as powerful as the server computer, because it will not be performing all of the same functions (for example, processing SQL Server transactions), but it should be powerful enough to handle the tag load that you expect.



The amount of free disk space required depends on whether or not you will have store-and-forward enabled for the IDAS. If store-and-forward is enabled, you need to make sure that the disk space on the remote IDAS computer is sufficient to store cached data if the network connection to the historian fails. Estimate the disk space requirements for a remote IDAS as that of the historian. For more information, see <u>Disk Space</u> <u>Requirements for Historical Data Files</u>.

A remote IDAS configured for store-and-forward has more stringent requirements on memory to ensure that the IDAS local storage engine has sufficient resources to run properly. In general, estimate memory requirements for a remote IDAS configured for store-and-forward the same as you would for a historian having the corresponding tag count.

Security Considerations for a Remote IDAS

If you set up a remote IDAS, you need to configure security settings that allow access permissions between the remote IDAS and the Historian. For example, the historian needs to access the remote computer to start and stop the IDAS. Also, the remote IDAS needs to access the historian computer to send data. These are administrative tasks, which require administrative permissions.

When you install the historian, you must specify an administrative user account under which all of the historian services run. Make sure that this same user account is added to the Administrators security group on the remote IDAS computer. The existence of the same administrative user account on both the computers, allows the historian to access the remote IDAS, and vice versa.

Note: A remote IDAS only requires the same administrative account to exist on the local computer and the historian. It is not required for you to log on to the remote IDAS computer using the administrator account.

If you change the Windows login using the Operations Control Management Console, after installing the historian, make sure that the user account change is reflected on the remote IDAS computer.

If you are running the historian in a domain environment (recommended), you can create the administrative user account on the domain controller and add the account to the Administrators group on the historian computer and the remote IDAS computer. Do not create a local user on any computer with the same name and/or password as the administrative user account.

If you are running a remote IDAS in a workgroup environment, there is no centralized management and authentication of user accounts (no domain controller). Create the same administrative user account on each individual computer running a historian component. For example, if you have a computer running the historian and plan to install remote IDASs on two other computers, create the user account (that is, matching user names and passwords) on all three computers.

For information on workgroups, domains, creating user accounts, and adding accounts to the Administrators security group, see your Microsoft operating system documentation.

Disk Sizing and Data Storage

A number of storage-related questions must be answered when setting up the Historian. They include:

- How important is the data? Is it acceptable that four weeks of data is stored online and is then over-written?
- How important is the configuration and event data? This type of information is stored in the Microsoft SQL Server database.
- How often is data in the Microsoft SQL Server database changing?



- Is anyone in the organization going to require operating data that is older than a month? Older than a year?
- How much is the SQL Server component of the historian expected to be used (for example, for the event system)?
- How long can the system be off-line because of a component failure?
- What happens if the system stops storing data?
- What happens if stored data is lost because of a hard drive failure?
- Can the server equipment be taken off-line to perform repairs?

Ask yourself questions like these to help you determine disk space requirements and how you should plan to protect your data.

A performance report for different historian systems is provided in <u>System Sizing Examples</u>.

General Hardware Recommendations for Storage

The following are the general recommendations for the hardware used for storage:

- SCSI drives configured using hardware RAID is optimum. The disk space required is a function of data rate and the desired history duration.
- NTFS is the only officially supported file system for a production environment.

Planning for Disk Space Requirements

There are a number of factors to consider when estimating the amount of disk space required to run the Historian:

- Disk space required to install the required software components and files needed to run the historian.
- Disk space required to store the historian database files.
- Disk space required to store the historian data files.
- If a remote IDAS is used, the disk space required on the local IDAS computer to store cached data if the network connection to the historian fails.
- We recommend that you keep sufficient free disk space (around 20%) so that you can run a disk defragmenting utility without negatively affecting the historian performance.

A performance report for different historian systems is provided in System Sizing Examples.

Disk Space Requirements for Database Files

The Historian installation program adds the Runtime and Holding databases to the Microsoft SQL Server by default. If you choose to store events to SQL Server, the A2ALMDB database is created.

Note: Historical plant data is not stored in the database files. This type of data is stored in special files called history blocks.

• The Runtime database stores all historian configuration data and classic event data. The information in the Runtime database is stored to disk as a database file named RuntimeDat_116_<server_name>.mdf. Its associated log file is RuntimeLog_116_<server_name>.ldf.



The configuration data in the database file remains relatively static and usually never causes the file size to go above 20 MB. However, if you set up classic events, records of event detections and the results of any data summaries or snapshots increase the size of the Runtime database file because the tables are filling up. Also, entries are created in the log file for event-related transactions. If the database files are set to auto-size, the Runtime database file expands to accommodate event-related data until the hard drive is full.

Note: In a 2,000,000 tag system, 2.5 GB of space should be preallocated for data files when modification tracking is not used. When modification tracking is used, 20 GB should be preallocated.

- The Holding database temporarily stores tag definitions being imported from InTouch[®] HMI software. The information in the Holding database is stored to a database file named HoldingDat_116_<server_name>.mdf. Its associated log file is HoldingLog_116_<server_name>.ldf.
- The A2ALMDB database stores alarm and event data. The information in the A2ALMDB database is stored to a database file named A2LMDat_115_<*server_name*>.mdf. Its associated log file is A2ALMDB_LOG.ldf.

The Runtime and Holding databases are set to automatically expand at a 10% rate (the default).

You cannot change these defaults during the installation. The databases can be resized later using Microsoft SQL Server utilities. For more information on sizing databases, see your Microsoft SQL Server documentation for guidelines.

Note: If you are upgrading a previous version of the Historian, the installation program needs space to save a copy of the old Runtime database while it creates the new one. To upgrade, the database space required is twice the size of the old database, plus the database size for the new install.

Disk Space Requirements for Historical Data Files

The Historian stores historical plant data to hard disk in special files called history blocks. When you install the historian, you are required to specify a storage location (directory) in which these files will be dynamically created and subsequently filled. You must have at least 200 MB of free disk space for these files to install the historian.

After the historian is up and running, when the free space on the drive containing the storage directory drops below a minimum threshold, the oldest data is overwritten. It is very important that you allocate enough disk space to store your plant data for the desired length of time.

The amount of data that can be stored to disk before running out of space is dependent upon the number of tag values that are stored and how often they are stored. That is, the more tags you have, the fewer values you can store per tag before you need to archive off the oldest data. Likewise, the higher the specified storage rate per tag, the faster the system runs out of space.

Important: You must have sufficient disk space in the circular storage area to hold at least two full history blocks, plus the space specified for the minimum threshold for the circular storage area. Use the Operations Control Management Console to view or change the minimum threshold value.

A performance report for different historian systems is provided in <u>System Sizing Examples</u>.

Storage and Network Transmission Sizes for Tags

The following table lists the storage and network transmission sizes for various tag types.



Тад Туре	Storage Engine - Storage Item Size (Bytes)	Storage Engine - Network Transmission Item Size (Bytes)
Analog - Integer	8	34
Analog - Floating Point	8	34
Analog - Double	12	38
Discrete	5	31
String	5+AvgStringLength	(5+AvgStringLength)+26
Analog Summary	37	63
Discrete State Summary	40	66
Analog State Summary	28 * NumberOfStates	(28*NumberOfStates)+26
String State Summary	(28+AvgStringLength) * NumberOfStates	((28+AvgStringLength) * NumberOfStates)+26
Alarm	325	6,061
Acknowledgement	325	6,066
Event	300	5,048

The storage size is used for estimating the space required for storage.

The network transmission size is used for calculating the network bandwidth required between HCAL and the historian.

If you enable compression on the AppEngine from which events are originating, then the network size is reduced by approximately 80%.

For alarms and events, the network transmission size assumes that the average name length for each of the alarm properties is 20 characters.

The following table provides some sizing examples.

Тад Туре	Storage Engine - Storage Item Size (Bytes)	Storage Engine - Network Transmission Item Size (Bytes)
String Tags (32 byte string)	5+32 = 37	(5+32)+26 = 63
State Summary for Analog (for 10 states)	28*10 = 280	71*10 = 710
State Summary for Discrete (for 2 states)	20*2 = 40	68*2 = 136
State Summary for String (10 states and 32 byte string)	(1+32)*10 = 330	(69+32)*10 = 1,010

Note: Current space calculations are different than the calculations used by the classic storage system.





Disk Space Estimation

This section provides guidance on how to determine the appropriate history block duration. A history block duration can range from 1 hour to 24 hours, with a default of 24 hours.

For retrieval performance, it is better to have longer block durations. However, if the incoming data rate is too high during a 24-hour period, the Original.dat file in which data collects may grow so large that issues occur for history block management and other aspects of the storage subsystem.

We recommend that you tune the history block duration so that the size of the Original.dat file does not exceed 8 GB per history block.

You can estimate how many bytes this data rate generates in one hour by using the following formula:

N kbps = (N / 8) bytes per second = (450 * N) bytes per hour

Where N is the transmission item size for the type of data that you are storing. For information on calculating this number, see <u>Storage and Network Transmission Sizes for Tags</u>.

If you multiply this by the history block duration, you can get an estimate of the biggest data file containing streamed and forwarded data, Original.dat.

If that estimate is larger than 8 GB, keep reducing the history block duration until the estimate is under the 8 GB limit.

Bandwidth Estimation for Streaming Data

The network bandwidth required can be estimated by adding the data transmission rate for all data types and the network overhead. Network overhead is approximately 4% of the total transmission rate, assuming the data rate is above 1000 points/sec. The estimated bandwidth would be the minimum bandwidth required for replication with reliable network (always connected). However, if there are network disconnections/ reconnections, using only the minimum required bandwidth would make the "catch-up" process take a long time if possible. It is recommended that you add a 30% safe margin to the estimated bandwidth to ensure that the forwarding process can complete quickly if an unexpected network outage occurs.

The formula for estimated bandwidth is as follows:

Bandwidth_{Streaming} = 1.04 * 8 * $\Sigma_{Each Tag Type}$ (Data Rate * Transmission Item Size)

Bandwidth_{RecommendedStreaming} = 1.3 * Bandwidth_{Streaming}

For example, with the following replication configuration:

- 1. Simple Replication 798 4-byte analog tags changing every second.
- 2. Simple Replication 815 discrete tags changing every second.
- 3. Simple Replication 187 string tags (20 bytes string) every second.
- 4. 1 Minute Analog Summary 800 tags
- 5. 1 Hour Analog Summary 800 tags
- 6. 1 Minute State Summary (Analog, 10 states) 800 tags
- 7. 1 Hour State Summary (Analog, 10 states) 800 tags

The average number of bytes transmitted every second for each of the above replication types is as follows. For a table of transmission sizes, see <u>Storage and Network Transmission Sizes for Tags</u>.



- 1. 798 * 34 = 27132 Bytes
- 2. 815 * 31 = 25265 Bytes
- 3. 187 * 52 = 9724 Bytes
- 4. 800 * 96 / 60 = 1280 Bytes
- 5. 800 * 96 / 3600 = 21 Bytes
- 6. 800 * 710 / 60 = 9467 Bytes
- 7. 800 * 710 / 3600 = 157.8 Bytes

Bandwidth_{Streaming} = 1.04 * 8 * (27132 + 25265 + 9724 + 1280 + 21 + 9467 + 158) = 608 Kbps

Bandwidth_{RecommendedStreaming} = 1.3 * 608 Kbps = 790 Kbps

Bandwidth Estimation for Store-and-Forward Data

If there is a network disconnection, HCAL sends data to local storage and later forwards the data to the historian. After the forwarding process starts, HCAL will try to send as much as data as possible with a large packet. The forwarding bandwidth is the bandwidth required to stream the store-and-forward data.

The store-and-forward storage size is the same as for local historian storage. The following table lists the average sizes used for bandwidth estimation used in this example.

Тад Туре	Storage Item Size (Bytes)
Discrete Tags	5
Analog Tags (4 byte data)	8
String Tags (32 byte string)	37
Analog Summary (4 byte analog)	37
State Summary for Analog (for 10 states)	28 * 10 = 280
State Summary for Discrete (for 2 states)	20 * 2 = 40
State Summary for String (10 states and 32 byte string)	(1 + 32) * 10 = 330

The forwarding bandwidths are calculated using the following formulas:

Bandwidth_{Forwarding} = 1.04 * 8 * $\Sigma_{Each Tag Type}$ (Data Rate * Storage Item Size)

Bandwidth_{RecommendedForwarding} = 1.3 * Bandwidth_{Forwarding}

For this example, if all are stored in the local storage engine and forwarded later, the number of bytes required for every second is as follows:

- 1. 798 * 8 = 6384 Bytes
- 2. 815 * 5 = 4075 Bytes
- 3. 187 * 25 = 4675 Bytes
- 4. 800 * 37 / 60 = 493 Bytes



- 5. 800 * 37 / 3600 = 8 Bytes
- 6. 800 * 280 / 60 = 3733 Bytes
- 7. 800 * 280 / 3600 = 62 Bytes

Bandwidth_{Forwarding} = 1.04 * 8 * (6384 + 4075 + 4675 + 493 + 8 + 3733 + 62) = 162 Kbps

Bandwidth_{RecommendedForwarding} = 1.3 * 162 Kbps = 211 Kbps

Time Estimation for Store-and-Forward Data

The actual time taken to forward store-and-forward snapshots depends on the amount of data accumulated and the bandwidth limit. HCAL typically waits for about 30 second to attempt forwarding process after reconnection. It may need to wait for a longer time if the historian is busy.

To simplify the calculation, the following is assumed:

- HCAL can start forwarding immediately without interruption
- The bandwidth is 30% above the data rate before disconnection

The time taken to forward is as follows:

Time_{Forwarding} = Time_{InStoreforward} * Ratio_{ForwardingDataSize} / 0.3

Where Ratio_{ForwardingDataSize} = Forwarding data Size / Streaming data size

For example, the date rate is 1 Mbps and the bandwidth is 1.3 Mbps. Assume you have simple replication for analog tags and store-and-forward data has been accumulating for 1 hour.

Ratio_{ForwardingDataSize} = 8 / 34 = 0.235

Time_{Forwarding} = 60 (minutes) * 0.235 / 0.3 = 47 minutes

About Data Compression and the Buffer Age Limit

Bandwidth usage is reduced by about 80% if compression is enabled. This assumes that the data rate is high enough to keep the buffer (64K) filled to have better compression ratio. For analog tags, the data rate is roughly 2000 values/second.

When the data rate is low, enabling compression may not be effective. To fill the buffer with low data rate, you can select the **Wait to send incomplete packets** option (BufferAgeLimit attribute) for the AppEngine configuration. This attribute is not applicable to replication.

Performance Considerations

For a complete Historian system, the following components put a demand on memory.

- Internal historian subsystems, such as the Configuration Manager, data acquisition, and data storage
- The associated Microsoft SQL Server
- The operating system
- Client access (data retrieval), which includes caching



When determining the amount of memory to purchase, remember that adding more memory is the cheapest and easiest thing that you can do to improve performance. Increasing the amount of memory reduces the amount the server has to use virtual memory, thus lowering the load on the storage subsystem. Even if you have a large amount of memory, additional memory is used as additional disk cache, speeding up disk access and therefore file service. Also, processes needed by the server become faster because they are memory-resident.

A major factor in system performance is the amount of plant data you anticipate storing in the system, including considerations about how often that data is stored and retrieved. In general, the more you store, the more often you store it, and the more you retrieve it, the slower the system. The major storage factors affecting the performance of the system are:

- Effective analog flow rate (analog updates per second).
- Period of online data storage required.
- Effective discrete variable flow rate.
- Number of concurrent end users required.
- Complexity of end user queries.
- Number and size of string tags, as well as the effective flow rate of string values.
- Number and duration of string tag retrieval queries, as well as the frequency at which these queries are executed.

A performance report for different historian systems is provided in System Sizing Examples.

Server Loading

When a user connects to the Historian with a client, configuration information is immediately requested from the historian. This information includes the tags that the server stores, their descriptions, engineering units, and other tag data. SQL Server reads this information from the database (stored on disk) and places it in memory.

As the user selects time periods to trend, the historian reads data from files located on the disk and prepares the results of the client's data request to be transmitted back to the client. The ability of the server to quickly handle subsequent requests for data from the same client and others is dependent on the server's ability to keep as much information in memory without having to again access data from the disk.

As a higher load is placed for memory, a higher load is placed on the disk I/O system as the server has to use disk caching and read from the data files.

The following table summarizes the loading for various systems.

System	Load Description
Acquisition and storage	Base load of the historian. This load exists as long as the system is running. However, this load is not affected by client activity.
Retrieval	Variable loading caused by data retrieval from client applications. When the client initially connects, the data requested is configuration data, which is stored in SQL Server. The historian requests data from SQL Server, causing its loading to increase. As the client requests historical data, the disk time increases as information from the data files is transferred to memory. This continues as the client requests additional data. If the client application



System Load Description

requests data that has already been transferred to memory, there is no associated disk activity and transfer of data to memory.

The server must be able to adequately handle the variation on loading caused by the client applications. To accomplish this, make sure that your hardware is sized so that it can handle the base load created by the acquisition and storage systems and that there are adequate resources still available for the retrieval system.

IDAS Performance

An IDAS can acquire an unlimited number of real-time data values, from an unlimited number of I/O Servers, each with an unlimited number of topics. However, IDASs are subject to the following limitations.

- The maximum sustained data throughput for any single IDAS is 30,000 items per second for real-time data. For late or old data, the maximum throughput is 9,000 items per second. The total combined throughput (real-time data plus late or old data) cannot exceed 30,000 items per second. For higher-volume applications, you can set up multiple IDASs to serve a single storage subsystem.
- The size of any data value is limited to 64,000 bytes.
- The maximum number of tags supported by any single IDAS is 30,000.

Tiered Historians

If you are installing a tiered historian, tier-1 nodes use the same basic configuration for the number and types of tags and data collection rates.

The tier 1 configuration should be "delta" data collected and stored:

- 12,000 analog tags every 2 seconds
- 2,900 discrete tags every 2 seconds
- 100 32-character string tags every 30 seconds

For the analog and discrete tags, the averages and value state aggregates are:

- 6,000 tags with an hourly calculation performed at the top of each hour
- 6,000 tags with 1-minute calculations performed at the top of each minute

plus

- 1,500 tags replicated (not aggregated) in tier 2
- 1,500 tags stored only in tier 1 (no aggregates or replication)



Storage Subsystem Performance

The storage subsystem can support a continuous data acquisition rate of 150,000 updates per second. The storage sub-system also supports a burst rate of 300,000 updates per second up to 1 second.

The classic storage subsystem can support a continuous real-time data acquisition rate of 30,000 updates per second and a burst rate of 60,000 updates per second up to 1 second.

The storage subsystem processes all real-time data as a high-priority task that is never interrupted. However, data received from "manual" methods (such as UPDATE/INSERT commands, CSV file imports, or store-and-forward) is handled by a low priority task. If the system is generally busy, then it may take some time for the manual data to be posted.

Networking Recommendations

The Historian is a highly configurable package that can be set up in many different ways depending on your needs.

The Historian can use any protocol supported by Microsoft SQL Server. You can use the default Microsoft SQL Server protocol (named pipes) with TCP/IP. TCP/IP is required if SuiteLink[™] is used.

Do not use the Historian computer as a domain controller.

It is highly recommended that you run the Historian on a dedicated computer. For example, running the Historian on a mail server or an Internet server may impact performance.

Generally, it is recommended that you split the process and IS networks to ensure that the process network does not become overloaded. The following illustration shows one possible network architecture where the Historian is the link between the process network and the business LAN/WAN





Data acquisition, PLCs, DCSs, process computers, instruments

For this architecture, install two network cards on a server computer and configure them to segment the IS network from the process network.

Note: All tags to be stored in Historian are on "advise" all the time. This may cause heavy load conditions on the process network. Before you install the Historian, investigate the possible load impact of installing the Historian on your network.

Client Access

All clients should connect to the Historian using the default Microsoft SQL Server connection. Usually, this means using the name of the computer on which the Historian is running as the server name when logging on.

To change the default network protocol used by Microsoft SQL Server to something other than named pipes, configure the client network access using the SQL Server Client Network Utility. For more information, see your Microsoft SQL Server documentation.

Support for Non-English Operating Systems

The English version of the Historian, the Historian Database Export/Import Utility, and the Historian Data Importer run on localized versions of all the supporting operating systems for the following languages. Set the


regional settings before you install SQL Server. The corresponding version of Microsoft SQL Server for the required language must be used.

- German
- French
- Japanese
- Simplified Chinese

The following entities are not supported in double-byte languages:

- Domain names, user names, and passwords (including SQL Server login names and passwords).
- Names of I/O Server host machines, I/O Server application names, topic names, and item names.
- Any text associated with licensing.

Integration with Other AVEVA Products

The Historian is an open relational database for plant and process data. Many of the features of the Historian allow it to be used with many of other products from AVEVA.

The Historian can store data from any application that supports SuiteLink[™]. Examples of AVEVA applications that can send data to the Historian are Application Server, I/O Servers, and InTouch[®] WindowViewer[™].

Any client application that can retrieve information using SQL can retrieve data from the Historian. For example, some AVEVA products that can retrieve data by means of SQL queries are the InTouch HMI, Historian Client applications and controls, Manufacturing Execution Module, and InBatch[™] products. The Historian further extends SQL to improve the ability to handle time series data.

Also, the Historian I/O Server (aahIOSvrSvc.exe) is an interface for clients to access current data values from the Historian by means of the SuiteLink protocol. The Historian I/O Server can update items with current values for given topics, providing "real-time" I/O Server functionality.

Finally, you can use InTouch to configure the Historian by importing tag definitions and I/O Server definitions from the InTouch Tagname.x file into the Runtime database.

System Sizing Examples

To help you determine how to size your system, performance reports are provided for different Historian configurations.

Important: The information presented here is a guideline only. The actual results in your environment may vary.

Process Historian Sizing Examples

Performance reports are provided for various levels of a Historian.

Server 1 (Non-Tiered): 2.4 GHz Single Processor Quad-Core CPU

Historian Specifications

• DELL OptiPlex 755 with 2.4 GHz single processor quad-core CPU



- 4 GB RAM
- 512 MB Virtual Memory
- 1 Gbps NIC
- Microsoft SQL Server 2017 Standard Edition
- SQL memory clamped @ 512 MB
- 12-hour history block duration

Tag Information

Tag count (total) = 5,187

Analog tags = 2,607

Discrete tags = 2,285

String tags = 295

Manual tags = 17

Update rate of +/- 5,000 updates/second

Remote IDAS

None.

Event Information

- 3 snapshot events, each having:
 - 1 analog snapshot
 - 1 discrete snapshot
 - 1 string snapshot
- 2 summary events, each having:
 - 1 AVG calculation (1 tag every 8 hours)
 - 1 MAX calculation (1 tag every 8 hours)
 - 1 MIN calculation (1 tag every 8 hours)
 - 1 SUM calculation (1 tag every 8 hours)
- 1 SQL insert every 4 hours
- 2 SQL multi-point updates every hour

Query Load

For the following seven queries, each are occurring at different times in the hour:

- 1 query (trend):
 - live mode 1 second update
 - 1-hour duration
 - 10 tags (7 analogs, 3 discretes)



- 1 query: 1-hour range / hour (1 tag)
- 4 queries: 15-minute range / hour (1 tag)
- 1 query: 24-hour report every 24 hours (25 to 30 tags)

Performance Results

Category	Value
Average CPU load (%)	1.896
Historian memory (Private Bytes) consumption (MB)	714
Number of online history blocks	18
Uncompressed hard drive disk space per history block (MB)	1002

Server 2 (Non-Tiered): Four Dual-Core 2.7 GHz CPUs

Historian Specifications

- DELL Precision WorkStation T5400 with four dual-core Intel Xeon 2.7 GHz CPUs
- 4 GB RAM
- 3,072 MB Virtual Memory
- 1 Gbps NIC
- Microsoft SQL Server 2017 Standard Edition
- SQL memory clamped @ 1,024 MB
- 4-hour history block duration

Tag Information

Tag count (total) = 63,000

Analog tags = 39,359

Discrete tags = 19,734

String tags = 295

Manual tags = 5,057

Update rate of +/- 30,000 updates/second

Remote IDAS

One remote IDAS:

- P4 1.7 GHz
- 1 GB RAM
- 34,000 tags via the remote IDAS and the rest via the local IDAS



Note: Because this configuration was used for performance and stress testing, the remote IDAS tag count is more than the recommended 30,000 maximum.

Event Information

- 3 snapshot events, each having:
 - 1 analog snapshot
 - 1 discrete snapshot
 - 1 string snapshot
- 2 summary events, each having:
 - 1 AVG calculation (1 tag every 8 hours)
 - 1 MAX calculation (1 tag every 8 hours)
 - 1 MIN calculation (1 tag every 8 hours)
 - 1 SUM calculation (1 tag every 8 hours)
- 1 SQL insert every 4 hours
- 2 SQL multi-point updates every hour

Query Load

For the following seven queries, each are occurring at different times in the hour:

- 1 query (trend):
 - live mode 1 second update
 - 1- hour duration
 - 10 tags (7 analogs, 3 discretes)
- 1 query: 1-hour range / hour (1 tag)
- 4 queries: 15-minute range / hour (1 tag)
- 1 query: 24-hour report every 24 hours (25 to 30 tags)

Performance Results

Category	Value
Average CPU load (%)	5.38
Historian memory (Private Bytes) consumption (MB)	1,174
Number of online history blocks	20
Uncompressed hard drive disk space per history block (GB)	4.12



Server 3 (Non-Tiered): Four Dual-Core 3.4 GHz CPUs

Historian Specifications

- DELL PowerEdge 6800 with four dual-core Intel Xeon 3.4 GHz CPUs
- 16 GB RAM
- 4,096 MB Virtual Memory
- 1 Gbps NIC
- Microsoft SQL Server 2017 Standard Edition
- SQL memory clamped @ 3,967 MB
- 2-hour history block duration

Tag Information

Tag count (total) = 133,941

Analog tags = 73,600

Discrete tags = 53,560

String tags = 6,920

Update rate of +/- 50,000 updates/second

MDAS

In the total tag count, 4,009 tags originated from Application Server.

Remote IDAS

Two remote IDASs:

- Remote IDAS 1: P4 1.9 GHz, 1 GB RAM
- Remote IDAS 2: P4 2.5 GHz, 512 MB RAM

44,370 tags via the remote IDAS 1

45,584 tags via the remote IDAS 2

44,383 tags via the local IDAS

Note: Because this configuration was used for performance and stress testing, the remote IDAS tag counts are more than the recommended 30,000 maximum.

Event Information

- 3 snapshot events, each having:
 - 1 analog snapshot
 - 1 discrete snapshot
 - 1 string snapshot
- 2 summary events, each having:
 - 1 AVG calculation (1 tag every 8 hours)



- 1 MAX calculation (1 tag every 8 hours)
- 1 MIN calculation (1 tag every 8 hours)
- 1 SUM calculation (1 tag every 8 hours)
- 1 SQL insert every 4 hours
- 2 SQL multi-point updates:
 - 1 every 15 minutes
 - 1 every 30 minutes

Query Load

For the following seven queries, each are occurring at different times in the hour:

- 1 query (trend):
 - live mode 1 second update
 - 15-minute duration
 - 15 tags (10 analogs, 5 discretes)
- 1 query: 1-hour range / hour (1 tag)
- 4 queries: 15-minute range / hour (1 tag)
- 1 query: 24-hour report every 24 hours (25 to 30 tags)

Performance Results

Category	Value
Average CPU load (%)	10
Historian memory (Private Bytes) consumption (MB)	360
Number of online history blocks	10
Uncompressed hard drive disk space per history block (average GB)	1.81

Server 4 (Tier-2): Eight Dual-Core 2.67 GHz CPUs (Hyper Threaded)

Historian Specifications

- DELL PowerEdge T610 with Eight Dual-Core 2.67 GHz CPUs (Hyper Threaded)
- 48 GB RAM
- 48 GB Virtual Memory
- 1 Gbps NIC
- Windows Server 2019 Data Center Edition
- Microsoft SQL Server 2017 Standard or Enterprise
- SQL memory clamped @ 4096 MB



• 1-hour history block duration

Tag Information

Tag count (total) = 2,000,000

Analog tags = 1,000,000

Discrete tags = 900,000

String tags = 100,000

Update rate of +/- 150,000 updates/second

Query Load

The following query is occurring at different times in the hour:

- 1 query (trend):
 - live mode 1 second update
 - 15-minute duration
 - 500 tags (250 analogs, 225 discretes, 25 strings)

Performance Results

Category	Value
Average CPU load (%)	26.444
Historian memory (Private Bytes) consumption (MB)	11,124
Number of online history blocks	246
Uncompressed hard drive disk space per history block (average GB)	10.00

SCADA (Tiered) Historian Sizing Examples

Performance reports are provided for various levels of a multiple Historian SCADA configuration.

Topology 1: Centralized Tiered Historian Topology on a Slow/Intermittent Network

This topology consists of ten tier-1 historians performing simple and summary replication of the same tags independently to two tier-2 historians. This topology is targeted to reflect the requirements of geographically distributed SCADA applications operating on slow and intermittent networks.



The 400 Kbps data transfer limit reflects a typical data transfer speed between remote locations over the Internet. The data transfer from each tier-1 historian to a tier-2 historian is assumed to be through a dedicated 400 Kbps connection; multiple tier-1 historians do not share the same 400 Kbps connection. It is assumed that the 400 Kbps is a bandwidth that can be fully used.

Tier 2 Historian Specifications

- DELL PowerEdge 6800 with four dual-core Intel Xeon 3.4 GHz CPUs
- 16 GB RAM with enabled PAE or 4 GB RAM
- Disk I/O subsystem of a 100MB/s throughput, 6 ms access time.
- 100/1000 Base-T network card
- 400 Kbps network connection (actual usable bandwidth)

Tier 1 Historian Specifications

- DELL Precision WorkStation T5400 with dual processor quad-core Intel Xeon 2.7 GHz CPUs
- 4 GB RAM
- Disk I/O subsystem of a 60MB/s throughput, 16 ms access time.
- 100/1000 Base-T network card

Loading Information

Assume that the total tag count on the tier-1 historian is 15,000.

The tier-1 historian receives 15,000 tags from I/O Servers of the following types and data rates:

- 12,000 4-byte analog delta tags changing every 2 seconds: (10,000 always fitting the real-time window and 2,000 falling outside of the real-time window being 50 minutes late).
- 2,800 1-byte discrete delta tags changing every 2 seconds
- 200 variable-length string delta tags of 32-character length changing every 30-seconds

The tier-2 historian stores the following:



- 6,000 tags with hourly analog summary calculations performed at the top of each hour (using 6,000 4-byte analog tags as tier-1 tags)
- Another 6,000 tags with 1-minute analog summary calculations performed at the top of each minute (using 6,000 4-byte analog tags as tier-1 tags)
- 1,500 tags replicated (as simple replication) to tier-2 (using 1,400 1-byte discrete tags and 100 variablelength string delta tags as tier-1 tags)
- Another 1,500 tags only stored on tier-1 (using 1,400 1-byte discrete tags and 100 variable-length string delta tags as tier-1 tags)

Performance Results for the Tier-2 Historian

Category	Value
Average CPU load (%) (with no queries executing)	1%
Historian memory (Virtual Bytes) consumption (GB)	3.05 GB
Number of online history blocks	312
Uncompressed hard drive disk space per history block (average MB)	888 MB
Latency Results	
Category	Value
Fastload (1 day fastload)	10.33 hours
Simple replication	4 seconds
Summary replication	4.6 seconds

Latency is the difference in time between when the value is received by the tier-1 historian and when it is received by the tier-2 historian.

Topology 2: Centralized Tiered Historian Topology for a Single Physical Location

A 100 Mbps data transfer limit reflects a typical data transfer speed within one location, but distributed over several buildings. In this case the 100 Mbps bandwidth is a physical characteristic of the connection. It is assumed that up to 33% of that physical bandwidth can be used.





Tier 2 Historian Specifications

- DELL PowerEdge 6800 with four dual-core Intel Xeon 3.4 GHz CPUs
- 16 GB RAM with enabled PAE or 4 GB RAM
- Disk I/O subsystem of a 100MB/s throughput, 6 ms access time.
- 100/1000 Base-T network card
- 100 Kbps network connection (actual usable bandwidth)

Tier 1 Historian Specifications

- DELL Precision WorkStation T5400 with dual processor quad-core Intel Xeon 2.7 GHz CPUs
- 4 GB RAM
- Disk I/O subsystem of a 60MB/s throughput, 16 ms access time.
- 100/1000 Base-T network card

Loading Information

Assume that the total tag count on the tier-1 historian is 15,000.

The tier-1 historian receives 15,000 tags from I/O Servers of the following types and data rates:

- 12,000 4-byte analog delta tags changing every 2 seconds: (10,000 always fitting the real-time window and 2,000 falling outside of the real-time window being 50 minutes late).
- 2,800 1-byte discrete delta tags changing every 2 seconds
- 200 variable-length string delta tags of 32-character length changing every 30-seconds

The tier-2 historian stores the following:

- 6,000 tags with hourly analog summary calculations performed at the top of each hour (using 6,000 4-byte analog tags as tier-1 tags)
- Another 6,000 tags with 1-minute analog summary calculations performed at the top of each minute (using 6,000 4-byte analog tags as tier-1 tags)



- 1,500 tags replicated (as simple replication) to tier-2 (using 1,400 1-byte discrete tags and 100 variablelength string delta tags as tier-1 tags)
- Another 1,500 tags only stored on tier-1 (using 1,400 1-byte discrete tags and 100 variable-length string delta tags as tier-1 tags)

Performance Results for the Tier-2 Historian		
Category	Value	
Average CPU load (%) (with no queries executing)	1.55%	
Historian memory (Virtual Bytes) consumption (GB)	3.3 GB	
Number of online history blocks	312	
Uncompressed hard drive disk space per history block (average MB)	888 MB	
Latency Results		
Category	Value	
Fastload (1 day fastload)	9.92 hours	
Simple replication	1.65 seconds	
Summary replication	1.51 seconds	

Latency is the difference in time between when the value is received by the tier-1 historian and when it is received by the tier-2 historian.

Topology 3: Simple Tiered Historian Topology for a Modem Configuration

In a modem configuration, the network bandwidth between the tier-1 and the tier-2 historians is limited by 56 Kbps. Because the tag count and the replication data rate of the tier-1 historian should be very limited, it would be sufficient to consider only one tier-1 historian performing simple replication to one tier-2 historian over a modem network.





Tier 2 Historian Specifications

- DELL Precision WorkStation T5400 with dual processor quad-core Intel Xeon 2.7 GHz CPUs
- 4 GB RAM
- Disk I/O subsystem of a 60MB/s throughput, 16 ms access time.
- 100/1000 Base-T network card
- 56K modem

Tier 1 Historian Specifications

- OptiPlex 755 with single processor quad-core CPU 2.4 GHz
- 4 GB RAM
- Disk I/O subsystem of a 60MB/s throughput, 16 ms access time.
- 100/1000 Base-T network card
- 56K modem

Loading Information

In the tier-1 historian modem configuration, the tier-1 historian receives 3,000 tags from I/O Servers of the following types with average update rate 300 items per second:

- 1,500 4-byte analog delta tags (1,400 always fitting the real-time window and 100 falling outside of the real-time window being 50 minutes late)
- 1,350 1-byte discrete delta tags



• 150 variable-length string delta tags of 32 bytes each

Performance Results for the Tier-2 Historian		
Category		Value
Average CPU load (%) (with no queries executing)		1%
Historian memory (Virtual Bytes) co	onsumption (GB)	1.86 GB
Number of online history blocks		30
Uncompressed hard drive disk space per history block (average GB)		43 MB
Latency Results		
Category	Value	
Fastload (1 day fastload)	n/a	
Simple replication	5 seconds	
Summary replication n/a		
Latency is the difference in time bet	ween when the value i	s received by the tier-

Latency is the difference in time between when the value is received by the tier-1 historian and when it is received by the tier-2 historian.



Chapter 10

AVEVA Historian Server Installation and Configuration

Preparing for the Historian Installation

A complete AVEVA Historian system consists of the following software components:

- Microsoft SQL Server
- Historian program files, database files, and history data files
- System Management Console, the configuration and control tool
- One or more local or remote IDASs (at least one must be defined)
- Historian documentation.

You should have a definite plan for implementing the historian in your plant environment before you start the installation process. This plan should include the type of network architecture for the historian system, the amount of disk space required for data storage, and the amount of space required for the historian database files and log files.

Also, any administrative security accounts that you specify for either the Microsoft SQL Server or the historian should be accounts that do not change often, if ever. In particular, do not change an administrative password during any part of the installation process.

You must have administrative rights on the local computer to install the historian. The account with which you log on to the computer must also be a sysadmin for the SQL Server or you must be able to provide a sysadmin account for the SQL Server when prompted for it during the installation.

The installation program detects any previous versions of the historian and notifies you of your migration options.

Microsoft SQL Server Installation

You need to install and run the required version of Microsoft SQL Server before installing the Historian.

Configure the following Microsoft SQL Server options before installing the historian. If you already have Microsoft SQL Server installed, you can run the Microsoft SQL Server setup program to change these options. Microsoft SQL Server options should only be configured by a qualified Windows or SQL Server administrator. For more information, see your Microsoft SQL Server documentation.



- Microsoft Client Utilities must be installed.
- The historian must run with the Microsoft SQL Server default instance name (that is, the computer name).
- During the Database Engine Configuration step of the SQL Server installation, make sure to add the Network Account and/or the local Administrators group as authorized users.
- Remote Microsoft SQL Servers are not supported by the historian.
- For networking support, use named pipes and any other support required at your site. However, you must select at least named pipes and TCP/IP sockets (the defaults). It is highly recommended that you do not modify the default configuration for named pipes and TCP/IP sockets.
- As you select the path to the data files, you must consider that the historian Runtime database will grow, especially if you are going to use the event subsystem (including summaries) or storing data in the ManualAnalog, ManualDiscrete, or ManualString tables.
- The Microsoft SQL Server services should be installed using the local system account. The account you specify should be an account that does not change often, if ever.
- For obvious security reasons, you should not use a blank password for Microsoft SQL Server.
- Both case-sensitive and case-insensitive SQL Servers are supported. However, you should avoid mixing casesensitive collations in tiered historian topologies.
- The SQL Server e-mail functionality requires a Windows domain user account. You can change the service account after SQL Server is installed. However, it is highly recommended that you use an account for which the password does not change often. For more information on SQL Server e-mail, see your Microsoft SQL Server documentation.

Historian Installation Features

The Historian installation program allows you to install some of the features of the system separately. The following table describes the various historian features that can be installed. The online help is installed with all the features.

For information on hardware and software requirements for installing any of these features, see the *Historian Readme* file.

Feature	Description
Historian	This option installs or re-installs the historian, configuration tools and selected subcomponents.
IDAS	An IDAS, which can be used remotely. The IDAS is always installed if you select to install a complete historian.
Configuration Tools	The server management tools include Historian Configuration Editor and Historian Management Console. Both of these applications are MMC snap- ins that are contained in the Operations Control Management Console. These tools are always installed on the same computer as the historian and can also be installed on a different computer on the network. The Historian Database Export/Import Utility is also an installed configuration tool.



Feature	Description
ActiveEvent	ActiveEvent is an ActiveX control that allows you to notify the historian classic event system when an event has occurred in another application, such as InTouch HMI software.
Historian Client Web	AVEVA Historian Client Web is a browser client included with the Historian. It is the on-premises version of AVEVA Insight, and provides instant access to production and performance data.
Historian Extensions	This option installs historian extensions for OData and SQL Server Reporting Services (SSRS).

About Historian Installation

Historian installation is performed in two phases. In the first phase, the installation program performs the following operations:

- Deploys the common components, such as SuiteLink and the License Viewer, unless they are already installed and validated.
- Locates the required version of a running Microsoft SQL Server on the local computer.
- Logs on to the installed Microsoft SQL Server using the account of the person who is currently logged on. This account must be an administrative account on the local computer.
- Checks for required disk space based on the features that you select.
- Creates the historian directories on the hard disk, installs program files for the selected features, and registers components. For more information, see <u>Historian Installation Features</u>.
- Populates the historian program or startup group with icons.

The Database Configuration Utility automatically runs after the historian program file installation is complete. This utility:

- Creates and/or configures the required databases.
- Creates the directory for the history data files (history blocks).

To install the Historian for use in a tiered historian environment, install the Historian on the individual computers, then implement them as described in the "Managing and Configuring Replication" chapter of the *Historian Administration Guide*.

Use the System Platform installation program to install the entire system or any of the features. It is assumed that you are familiar with the installation options. The installation program does not log any errors that may occur.

You must have administrative rights on the local computer to install the historian. The account with which you log on to the computer must also be a sysadmin for the SQL Server or you must be able to provide a sysadmin account for the SQL Server when prompted for it during the installation.

Important: Do not install the Historian on a computer named INSQL, because this conflicts with the name of the Historian OLE DB provider and the installation eventually fails.

For detailed instructions on installing, see Installing System Platform System Platform.



After the installation completes, configure the server using the instructions in <u>AVEVA Historian Configuration</u>. Refer to the *System Platform Readme* before using the historian.

Testing the Installation

Test the Historian installation to make sure that everything is installed correctly and is working properly.

To test the installation

- 1. Start the Historian.
- 2. Start the storage system and check that the system is receiving data from the system tags.

After the historian is installed, no additional configuration is required to run client tools against the server using named pipes. However, you may want to change the system or server configuration using the Operations Control Management Console.

Antivirus Software

After installing the Historian, configure your antivirus software. Be sure to exclude any folder that contains history blocks. Refer to <u>TechNote TN2865</u>, available from the AVEVA Global Customer Support (GCS) web site, for important information about antivirus software. Enter your GCS credentials to access the Tech Note.

Historian Menu Shortcuts

The following Start menu shortcuts are created in the AVEVA Historian folder.

- Administration
- Configuration Export and Import
- Data Import
- Historian Client Web
- Query
- Trend

The following Start menu shortcuts are created in the AVEVA folder:

- Change Network Account
- Configurator
- SQL Access Configurator
- Operations Control Management Console

Note: If you performed a complete historian installation, the Operations Control Management Console is configured so that the local SQL Server is already registered. However, if you only installed the client tools, the console is empty.



Repairing the Historian

For a repair, the installation program automatically detects if you have an existing copy of the Historian on your computer and then reinstalls missing or corrupt program files, registry keys, and shortcuts.

For detailed repair instructions, see <u>Repairing an Installation</u>.

To repair a database, use the Database Configurator. For more information, see AVEVA Historian Configuration.

Modifying the Historian Installation

You can modify the Historian features that are already installed.

For detailed modification instructions, see Modifying an Installation.

To modify the disk directories for the database files and/or the history data files (history blocks), use the Database Configurator. For more information, see <u>AVEVA Historian Configuration</u>.

Uninstalling the Historian

The uninstall program allows you to remove all the historian program files. The Runtime, Holding, and A2ALMDB databases and the history blocks are not deleted.

During the uninstall, you have the option to delete the configuration files (idatacfg_*.dat) created by IDAS and the Configuration Service.

For detailed uninstall instructions, see Uninstalling AVEVA System Platform.

Upgrading from a Previous Version

You can upgrade directly to the current version of the Historian (2023) from Historian 2017 and later versions.

You should upgrade the Historian Server before upgrading Historian remote IDAS nodes. Remote IDAS nodes that are not upgraded to 2023 will remain fully functional. However, it is strongly recommended that you upgrade them to 2023 to incorporate minor improvements and simplify further upgrades and maintenance.

If you have been using replication, when upgrading Historian nodes, upgrade the tier-2 Historian node first and then the tier-1 Historian node. A tier-2 node must use the same release of the Historian, or one release newer than its tier-1 nodes. A tier-1 node cannot replicate to a tier-2 node running an earlier version of the Historian.

About Database Migration

The data in an existing Runtime database can be migrated to a new Runtime database. The old Runtime database is not deleted. Keep the old database until the Historian migration is validated.

Important: Back up the Runtime database before performing the migration.

There is no migration for the content of the Holding database, because this database is used only to temporarily hold data when importing an InTouch data dictionary.

Any configuration data associated with obsolete system tags is not migrated.

For the event subsystem, all SQL-based detectors and actions are migrated to the OLE DB syntax. If you have any custom SQL-based detectors or actions, you need to rewrite them using the OLE DB syntax.



History data that is stored in SQL Server tables (not history blocks) can be migrated after the general upgrade has been performed.

The scripts are created when you first run the database setup utility so that you can run them at any time. The file path is:

To migrate your database

- 1. On a new Historian server, use SQL Management Studio to:
 - a. Delete any empty Runtime database that was created as part of the installation.
 - **b.** Restore the old Runtime database from a backup.
- 2. Run the Configurator.
- 3. In the left pane, select Historian and then select Server.
- 4. Configure the server. See <u>AVEVA Historian Configuration</u> for details.

Upgrading the Historian Version (Microsoft SQL Server 32-bit)

Beginning with Historian 2020, only 64-bit versions of Microsoft SQL Server are supported. If your existing databases are hosted on a 32-bit version of Microsoft SQL Server, you must migrate them to a 64-bit version.

To upgrade the Historian when using 32-bit Microsoft SQL Server:

- 1. Shut down and disable the Historian using the Operations Control Management Console. Any remote IDAS nodes will go into store-and-forward mode.
- 2. Back up the Runtime, Holding, and A2ALMDB databases.
- 3. Uninstall the 32-bit version of Microsoft SQL Server.
- 4. Install a supported 64-bit version of Microsoft SQL Server that is compatible with your database backups.
- 5. Restore the Runtime, Holding, and A2ALMDB databases.
- 6. Run the System Platform installation program to perform the upgrade. For more information, see <u>Upgrading</u>, <u>Modifying</u>, and <u>Repairing System Platform</u>.
- 7. In the configurator, configure 'Server' without selecting the 'Drop and Create' option. Provide the correct path to the data files for the restored databases. For example, C:\Program Files\Microsoft SQL Server\MSSQL12.MSSQLSERVER\MSSQL\DATA.
- 8. Configure the remaining components, if not already configured.
- **9.** Start the Historian. The Historian will start acquiring and storing the store-and-forward data from the existing remote IDASs.
- **10.** After the Historian Server node is upgraded, you can upgrade any remote IDAS nodes.

Upgrading the Historian Version

Refer to <u>Upgrading from a Previous Version</u> to see which versions can be directly upgraded to Historian 2023.

The existing Runtime and A2ALMDB databases are automatically migrated to during the installation, preserving all existing settings and tag configuration.



History blocks created using a previous version of the Historian do not require any migration and can be copied to and used with Historian 2023, as long as the tags they contain are present in the Runtime database.

To upgrade the Historian

- 1. Back up the Runtime database.
- 2. Shut down and disable the Historian using the Operations Control Management Console. Any remote IDAS nodes will go into store-and-forward mode.
- 3. Run the System Platform installation program to perform the upgrade. For more information, see <u>Upgrading</u>, <u>Modifying</u>, and <u>Repairing System Platform</u>.
- 4. The installation program detects the previous version of the Runtime database and prompts you to keep the existing database or recreate the new database.
- 5. If you re-create the database, existing Runtime database will not be re-named but will be overwritten with a new Runtime database. If you do not re-create the database, the existing database will remain intact.
- 6. Finish the installation of the Historian.
- 7. Restart the computer.
- 8. Start the Historian. The Historian will start acquiring and storing the store-and-forward data from the existing remote IDASs.
- 9. After the Historian Server node is upgraded, you can upgrade any remote IDAS nodes.

Migration of History Data Stored in SQL Server

The normal SQL Server tables in the Runtime database contain configuration data and certain types of history data. History data that is stored in the normal SQL Server tables includes:

- Data in the AnalogManualHistory, DiscreteManualHistory, and StringHistory tables.
- Classic event and summary data, which is stored in the EventHistory, SummaryHistory, SummaryData, AnalogSnapshot, DiscreteSnapshot, and StringSnapshot tables.

These tables can contain hundreds of thousands of rows, if not millions of rows. Depending of the amount of data to be migrated, migrating this data can take a few minutes to many hours, and in some cases, days.

Important: You MUST perform the database migration before the server goes back into production, because the history table content will be truncated. Be sure that you have disk space equivalent to two times the size of the Runtime database on the drive to which the history data will be migrated; otherwise, the migration may fail. Back up the Runtime database with the migrated configuration data before migrating the history data.



Chapter 11

AVEVA Historian Client Information

About the Historian Client

You can use the Historian Client software to address specific data representation and analysis requirements. The Historian Client software maximizes the value of the data present in the Historian and helps you organize, explore, analyze, present, and distribute process data in a variety of formats.

With the Historian Client software, you can:

- Explore data graphically to find important information
- Analyze data
- Develop and execute ad hoc queries against any data stored in the Historian database
- Visualize the current process state

Historian Client Components

The Historian Client software contains a set of tools that eliminate the need to be familiar with the SQL Server, and provides intuitive point-and-click interfaces to access, analyze, and graph both current and historically acquired time-series data.

Desktop Applications

The Historian Client software includes the following stand-alone applications:

Historian Client Trend

- · Allows plotting of historical and recent data over time
- Allows you to compare data over different time periods

Historian Client Query

- Allows you to query the Historian database
- Provides complex, built-in queries
- Eliminates the need to be familiar with the database structure or SQL



Microsoft Office Add-Ins

The Historian Client software includes the following add-ins for Microsoft Excel and Microsoft Word. The add-ins support only 32-bit versions of these applications.

Historian Client Workbook

• Allows display and analysis of historical and recent data from a Historian database using the Excel spreadsheet format

Historian Client Report

• Allows advanced reporting of historical and recent data from a Historian database using the Word document format

ActiveX and .NET Controls

The aaHistClientTrend and aaHistClientQuery controls provide the essential functionality of the Historian Client Trend and Historian Client Query. You can use these controls in container applications, such as InTouch[®] HMI software, Visual Studio (Visual Basic .NET or C#), and Internet Explorer. You can also use Historian Client "building block" controls (such as aaHistClientTagPicker, aaHistClientTimeRangePicker, and so on) in your custom applications.

Requirements and Recommendations

You must log on to the computer as an administrator to install the Historian Client software. Be sure that you read the hardware and software requirements in the *System Platform Readme* before starting the installation.

Support for Operating System Language Versions

The English version of the Historian Client software runs on the following operating system languages:

- English
- French
- German
- Japanese
- Simplified Chinese

Note: The SQL Server locale language must be the same as the operating system locale language.



Chapter 12

AVEVA Historian Client Installation and Configuration

The System Platform installation program allows you to install the Historian Client software. The System Platform installation program copies the files from the setup DVD to the target computer.

For more information on the components installed, see Historian Client Components.

About Historian Client Installation

Before installing the Historian Client software, log on to the computer as an administrator. Before copying the software files, the System Platform installation program checks for the basic system prerequisites.

You can individually select or deselect features of Historian Client for installation. These are:

- Trend/Query Clients: This feature lets you view and analyze data and trends.
- Microsoft Office (32-bit) Add-ins: This feature installs Historian Client add-ins for Microsoft Word and Excel. You must have a 32-bit version of these programs installed.
- PDF Documents

The System Platform installation program checks if a Microsoft Excel process is running. If Excel is running, a message appears informing you that an Excel process and the aaHistClientReportingService.exe service are running.

To continue with the installation, you need to manually stop the services and click **Retry**. Click **Close** if you want to stop the installation.

Note: In some cases, depending upon the operating system and the prerequisite, you may have to restart the system after the prerequisites are installed. In such cases, the setup automatically continues after the restart.

For instructions on installing the Historian Client software files, see Installing System Platform.

After the Historian Client software is installed on the computer, you must install the Language Packs manually.

Using Historian Client Software with Roaming Profiles

If your network environment uses roaming user profiles, you must change a registry key so that changes to any Historian Client software options are saved in the user profiles.



To save software options in the roaming user's profile, add a DWORD key named "EnableRoaming" to the user's HKEY_CURRENT_USER\Software\ArchestrA\ActiveFactory registry folder and change its value to 1.

Repairing the Historian Client Installation

You can use the System Platform installation program to repair corrupt files of the installed features. For more information, see <u>Repairing an Installation</u>.

Note: You can also use the standard Windows **Uninstall/Change Programs** feature from the Control Panel to repair the Historian Client software installation.

Uninstalling Historian Client

You can use the System Platform installation program to remove the Historian Client software that exists on your computer. For more information, see <u>Uninstalling AVEVA System Platform</u>.

Note: You can also use the standard Windows **Uninstall/Change Programs** feature from the Control Panel to remove the Historian Client software installation.

Upgrading from a Previous Version

You can upgrade directly to the current version of the Historian (2023) from Historian 2017 and later versions. For System Platform Enterprise, the only version supported for upgrade is Historian 2020 R2 SP1.

You should upgrade the Historian Server before upgrading Historian remote IDAS nodes. Remote IDAS nodes that are not upgraded will remain fully functional. However, it is strongly recommended that you upgrade them to Historian 2023 to incorporate minor improvements and simplify further upgrades and maintenance.

If you have been using replication, when upgrading historian nodes, upgrade the tier-2 historian node first and then the tier-1 historian node.



Appendix A

Using Silent Installation

System Platform supports silent (command line) installation. This feature uses plain text files called "Response Files" and enables you to install System Platform products without user interaction.

Prerequisite software includes .NET Framework and SQL Server. Details about prerequisite software are provided in <u>System Platform Prerequisites</u>. See <u>SQL Server Requirements</u> for additional information about supported versions of SQL Server.

Important: SQL Server and the .NET Framework are not installed automatically by the command line installer and must be installed before starting silent installation. Other prerequisites are installed automatically.

Setup.exe is run from the command line and accepts as an argument the name and path of a response file containing pre-scripted responses to System Platform installation prompts.

System Platform 2023 incorporates a functional change to the installation workflow. By default, some redistributable libraries from Microsoft and other vendors are not installed by default because of the support status of these libraries. **You must acknowledge this change to successfully install System Platform.** This applies both to GUI-based installation and to silent installation. See <u>Response File Entry to Acknowledge Installation</u> <u>Change Information (Redistributable Libraries)</u>.

Additionally, a patch for AVEVA Manufacturing Execution System and certain versions of AVEVA Recipe Management is required to ensure compatibility with System Platform 2023. You must acknowledge this requirement to successfully install System Platform. See <u>Response File Entry to Acknowledge Installation</u> Change Information (Redistributable Libraries) for more information.

Important: Use silent installation only to install a new system or upgrade an existing one. Adding or removing components during an upgrade is NOT supported.

Starting Silent Installation

To run silent installation, open a command prompt using **Run as administrator**. The basic syntax of the silent installation command consists of the full path to the setup.exe file (typically the DVD drive designation on your local computer), the command line switch for silent installation, and the full path to the response file. In the examples that follow, C:\ is the system drive and D:\ is the DVD drive.

```
To see descriptions of the switches and options available, enter /? after the setup command.
D:\setup.exe /?
Setup.exe will install products in UI and Silent mode.
Setup.exe [/silent] [/silentmodify] [/silentrepair] [/silentuninstall]
[/silentnoreboot] [/silentpatch] [/mingui] [responsefile] [/nowait]
/silent specifies the installation is silent Install
```



```
and doesn't show UI.
  /silentmodify
                       specifies the installation is silent modify
                       and doesn't show UI.
 /silentrepair
                       specifies the installation is silent repair
                       and doesn't show UI.
  /silentuninstall
                       specifies this is silent uninstall.
  /silentnoreboot
                       specifies the installation is silent Install
                       and doesn't show UI with no reboot.
                       specifies the installation is silent patch Install.
 /silentpatch
                       specifies the installation is silent with mingui.
  /mingui
  /nowait
                       specifies with silent Install/modify/repair/uninstall
                       with immediate return to command line.
  responsefile
                       specifies the response file.
Examples:
setup.exe /silent responsefile.txt
setup.exe /silent responsefile.txt /domainname=adminuserdomainname /uname=adminusername /
upwd=adminuserpassword
setup.exe /silentmodify responsefile.txt
setup.exe /silentrepair {productguid}
setup.exe /silentrepair {productguid}.{ownerguid}
setup.exe /silentuninstall {productguid}
setup.exe /silentnoreboot responsefile.txt
setup.exe /silentpatch
setup.exe /mingui responsefile.txt
setup.exe /silent responsefile.txt /nowait
setup.exe /silent responsefile.txt /domainname=adminuserdomainname /uname=adminusername /
upwd=adminuserpassword /nowait
setup.exe /silentmodify responsefile.txt /nowait
setup.exe /silentrepair {productguid} /nowait
setup.exe /silentrepair {productguid}.{ownerguid} /nowait
setup.exe /silentuninstall {productguid} /nowait
```

Silent installation syntax:

D:\setup.exe /silent <path\response-file-name>

Note that the full filespec of the response file (filename plus location of file) must be included. For example: D:\setup.exe /silent C:\docs\SPInstall\response.txt

The /silent switch completely disables the graphical user interface of Setup.exe. There is no input from or feedback to the end user. However, the installation will output progress to a log file. The log is usually found here:

C:\Program Files (x86)\Common Files\ArchestrA\Install\ {<FolderName>}
\ILog<timestamp>.log

Silent installation with minimal GUI syntax:

D:\setup.exe /MINGUI <path\response-file-name>

Running setup with the /MINGUI switch will cause setup to install without any input from the end user, but it will display the progress of the installation on screen.

Silent installation with automatic system restart disabled:

D:\setup.exe /silentnoreboot <path\response-file-name>

Running with the /silentnoreboot switch will keep the command window open so you can preserve messages from the installation process. A manual reboot will be required after installation completes.



Silent installation command-line help:

D:\setup.exe /?

Running setup with the /? switch will display the silent installation command-line help.

Using Response Files

Response files are plain text files. They specify which System Platform products, and even which features of a product that Setup.exe will install. For example, one response file could be used to install the components for a run-time environment. A different response file might be used to install the components for a development server.

Response files can install more than one product at a time, enabling you to install all the necessary products for a given role.

Because the user will get little feedback on error conditions, it is necessary for the user to perform the following checks before installing via command line:

- 1. The operating system must be a supported version with all of the correct service packs.
- 2. SQL Server must be a supported version.
- 3. The user running installation must have administrator rights.
- You must acknowledge the changes to System Platform 2023, as compared to earlier versions, regarding which redistributable assemblies are installed. To acknowledge this, set the parameter "OutOfSupportRedistConsentForm.SRedistConsent=true" in the response file. See <u>Response File Entry to</u> <u>Acknowledge Installation Change Information (Redistributable Libraries)</u> for more information.
- You must acknowledge that a patch may be needed to ensure compatibility with AVEVA Manufacturing Execution System and AVEVA Recipe Management, even if you do not have these products installed. To acknowledge this, set the parameter "CompatibilityAlert.SProductCompatibilityConsent=true" in the response file. See <u>Response File Entry to Acknowledge Installation Change Information (Redistributable Libraries)</u> for more information.

If it is needed, apply the patch(es) to Manufacturing Execution System and/or Recipe Management, not to System Platform. See the <u>Compatibility Readme</u>, located in the **InstallFiles>CoexistenceUpdates** folder on the System Platform Installation media for more information.

Any issues that would stop a normal GUI-based installation, such as the presence of incompatible software, will also prevent successful completion of a command-line installation. You can keep the command prompt open during installation by specifying the **/silentnoreboot** switch. This will let you view messages related to installation issues. Installation messages are lost when the system restarts. With the **/silentnoreboot** switch, you will need to manually restart the system after installation completes. If you allow the system to restart automatically, as it will if you use the **/silent** switch, you can search the log file for error conditions that may have stopped the installation from completing successfully.

Note: SQL Server and the .NET Framework are not installed automatically by the command line installer and must be installed before starting silent installation. Other prerequisites are installed automatically.

All the sample response files contain information to create the Network Account for system communication. If another System Platform product was previously installed and the the Network Account was already created, subsequent installations will retain the original Network Account. A new account is not created.

For example, under those conditions, Setup.exe ignores the following properties in the response file:



AdminUserForm.SUserName AdminUserForm.SPassword AdminUserForm.SCreateLocal AdminUserForm.SDomainName AdminUserForm.SEnhancedSecurity

A good approach for testing is to first run the setup.exe in GUI mode on a typical computer and confirm that no incompatibilities exist that would stop the installation, then cancel and run by command line.

Note: If the GUI-based installation requires a system restart after the installation is complete, installing by command line will also require a system restart. Using the **/silent** switch allows the system to restart automatically. The **/silentnoreboot** switch suppresses the automatic restart, but will require a manual restart.

Creating a Response File

Response files consist of an INSTALL section and a CONFIGURATOR section. See <u>Response File Samples</u> for examples that you can use after making minor edits.

Install Section

The INSTALL section defines the items that would be selected through the GUI installation dialog windows. These inclue:

- Root installation directory. The default path is C:\Program Files (x86).
 - FeatureForm.SInstallDir=C:\Program Files (x86)
- The Network Account (name and password), used for inter-node and inter-product communications.
 - AdminUserForm.SUserName=NetworkAccount
 - AdminUserForm.SPassword=Password123
- For upgrade only, whether or not to remove Administrator privileges from the Network Account.
 - RemoveArchestraUser.RemoveA2AFromAdmin=true
- Other Settings (not included in Response File Samples; add these manually if needed):
 - AdminUserForm.SDomainName=YourDomain
 - AdminUserForm.SEnhancedSecurity=True/False
 - If True, the Network Account is NOT added to the system Administrators group.
 - If False, the Network Account is added to the system Administrators group.
- Acknowledgement of change to installation behavior:
 - OutOfSupportRedistConsentForm.SRedistConsent=false

Setting the parameter to true indicates that you acknowledge this information. If the parameter is left at its default, installation fails. See <u>Response File Entry to Acknowledge Installation Change Information</u> (<u>Redistributable Libraries</u>) for more information.

- Acknowledgement that a patch may be required for AVEVA Manufacturing Execution System and AVEVA Recipe Management to ensure compatibility with System Platform:
 - CompatibilityAlert.SProductCompatibilityConsent=false



Setting the parameter to true indicates that you acknowledge this information. If the parameter is left at its default, installation fails. See <u>Response File Entry to Acknowledge Compatibility Requirement</u> for more information.

- The components and related requirements that will be installed. You can specify by inclusion or exclusion:
 - Install by inclusion example:

FeatureForm.SFeatureList=AVEVA System Platform.ASBRuntime,Application Server.Bootstrap,Application Server.IDE

• To specify products by exclusion, first add ALL products with an inclusion statement, then list the ones that should be left out. Install by exclusion example:

FeatureForm.SFeatureList=ALL

FeatureForm.SExcludeFeatureList=InTouch Access Anywhere Secure Gateway.SecurityServer_Files,InTouch Access Anywhere Authentication

- Use the following language setting when installing System Platform on a non-English operating system:
 - Example:

LanguageForm.Language=French

Other options are German, Japanese, and SimplifiedChinese

Configurator Section

The CONFIGURATOR section defines the components that would be configured through the Configurator GUI. These include the following:

- **Common Platform.** Entries to configure the Common Platform components:
 - System Management Server (SMS), which includes:
 - Certificate management
 - Common Platform ports
 - Security settings for SuiteLink and Network Message Exchange (NMX)
 - Authentication Provider (Azure AD)
 - License Mode, which includes:
 - Flex mode (enable or disable)
 - Flex license type (System Platform Supervisory or System Platform Enterprise)

See <u>Response File Entries to Configure the Common Platform</u> for more information.

- Industrial Graphics Server. See <u>Response File Entries to Configure the Industrial Graphic Server</u> for more information.
- AVEVA Historian. See <u>Response File Entries to Configure the Historian</u> for more information.
- AVEVA Enterprise Licensing Manager. See <u>Response File Entries to Configure the License Server</u> for more information.
- AVEVA System Monitor Manager. See <u>Response File Entries to Configure the System Monitor</u> for details.



Response File Entry to Acknowledge Installation Change Information (Redistributable Libraries)

This release of System Platform does not install certain components from Microsoft and other third-parties that were installed in prior versions because they are now out-of-support. If you have custom-built objects or controls that rely on these components, you can still choose to install them. However, you must acknowledge this change before you can install System Platform. The GUI-based installation process displays a form describing the change in behavior. Silent install of System Platform requires that you change the setting of a parameter, as described below:

IMPORTANT CHANGE TO INSTALLATION BEHAVIOR

With this release of System Platform, AVEVA no longer installs older, out-of-support redistributable libraries from Microsoft or other vendors. For the long term sustainability and security of your system, AVEVA strongly recommends that you do not install these libraries, which are outside their published support life cycle and will not necessarily receive any further functional or security-related fixes from their vendors in the future.

CONSIDERATIONS FOR EXISTING PROJECTS

If upgrading an existing project which includes custom-built executable components, which were added to the system after installation, consider that they may rely on these older libraries. Examples include but are not limited to:

- Objects developed using the Application Object Toolkit (AOT)
- Custom script libraries (DLLs)
- Third-party custom-built .NET controls

AVEVA recommends you recompile these custom components using the latest redistributable libraries. You should request updates/upgrades for third-party controls, libraries, and components from their vendors.

Set the following parameter to true in your response file to indicate that you have read and acknowledged this information:

OutOfSupportRedistConsentForm.SRedistConsent=true

Installation will not succeed if the parameter is left at its default value, if the parameter is not present in the response file, or if the parameter has an invalid configuration.

Response File Entry to Acknowledge Compatibility Requirement

A patch must be applied to the following products and versions to ensure compatibility with System Platform 2023:

- Manufacturing Execution System 6.2.0. Older versions must be updated to version 6.2 and then patched.
- Recipe Management 4.5.0 and 4.6.0. These two most recent versions must be patched. Versions prior to 4.5 are compatible with System Platform 2023 and do not require patching.

Even if your system does not include Manufacturing Execution System or Recipe Management, you must acknowledge that you are aware of this potential incompatibility and the need to fix it by applying the patch. The GUI-based installation process displays an alert if it detects either of these products on the node where you are installing System Platform. Please review the Compatibility Readme, located in the

InstallFiles>CoexistenceUpdates folder on the System Platform Installation media for more information.



Silent installation of System Platform requires that you change the setting of a parameter, as described below, whether or not the products are installed:

Set the following parameter to true in your response file to indicate that you have read and acknowledged this information:

CompatibilityAlert.SProductCompatibilityConsent=true

Installation will not succeed if the parameter is left at its default value, if the parameter is not present in the response file, or if the parameter has an invalid configuration.

Response File Entries to Configure the Common Platform

The Common Platform settings are used to:

- Establish machine trust between nodes via the System Management Server. See <u>Common Platform</u> for additional information.
- Configure an external Authentication Provider. See <u>Authentication Provider Configuration</u> for more information.
- Set the License Mode and license type. See <u>License Mode Configuration</u> for more information.

```
<configurator>
```

Common Platform.ASBRuntime.HttpPort=80

Common Platform.ASBRuntime.HttpsPort=443

 $\ensuremath{{//}}$ Sets the HTTPS port of Aveva web apps running on the local node.

// Corresponds to the HTTPS Port setting on the Advanced Configuration Ports tab. Common Platform.ASBRuntime.ManagementServerPort=443

// Sets the HTTPS port number for a "remote" SMS, and is used only when the SMS is
on a different node.

// Corresponds to the SMS Port setting on the Advanced Configuration Certificates
tab.

Common Platform.ASBRuntime.ManagementServerName=MachineName

// Use if connecting to System Management Server on another node.

Common Platform.ASBRuntime.UserName=username

Common Platform.ASBRuntime.Password=password

// UserName and Password parameters are not required if the current logged in user

is authenticated to access the Management Server. You can remove the parameters if they are not required.

// The following parameters enable or disable enhanced SuiteLink and NMX security:

Common Platform.ASBRuntime.SuiteLinkMixedModeEnabled = 0

// Valid entries are 0 or 1. 0 indicates SuiteLink accepts only encrypted connection
requests.

// Set to 0 for new installations. For upgrades should be set to 1, then reset to 0 when all nodes have been upgraded.

// NEW for System Platform 2023

Common Platform.ASBRuntime.NmxAllowAllUsers = 0

// Valid entries are 0 or 1. 0 restricts user access.

// Set to 0 for new installations. For upgrades should be set to 1, then reset to 0 when all nodes have been upgraded.

// NEW for System Platform 2023

Common Platform.ASBRuntime.AsbManagedCertificates=true

Common Platform.ASBRuntime.BindingCertificateThumbprint=thumbprint

// Required if AsbManagedCertificates = false, otherwise do not use this parameter.
// The following parameter is used to configure a redundant SSO server:



Common Platform.ASBRuntime.IsRedundantSsoServer = true // Ensure ManagementServerName is the remote node machine name, not the local node machine name. // NEW for System Platform 2023 // The following parameters are used for configuring Azure AD as an external Authentication Provider: Common Platform.Bootstrap.IsAzureADMode=true // Enables Azure AD as the Authentication Provider. // NEW for System Platform 2023 Common Platform.Bootstrap.Endpoint=<AzureEndpoint> // Sets the Endpoint when Azure AD is the Authentication Provider. Common Platform.Bootstrap.ClientId=<AzureClientID> // Sets the Client ID when Azure AD is the Authentication Provider. // NEW for System Platform 2023 Common Platform.Bootstrap.ClientSecret=<AzureClientSecret> // Sets the Client Secret when Azure AD is the Authentication Provider. // NEW for System Platform 2023

</configurator>

The following parameters are included in some sample response files, but **not implemented** in System Platform 2023:

Common Platform.Bootstrap.IsAVEVAConnectMode=true

Common Platform.Bootstrap.Endpoint="AVEVAConnectEndPoint"

Common Platform.Bootstrap.ClientId=<AVEVAConnectClientID>

Common Platform.Bootstrap.ServiceEndpoint=<AVEVAConnectServiceEndpoint>

Common Platform.Bootstrap.AccessToken=<AVEVAConnectAccessToken>

Response File Entries to Configure the Industrial Graphic Server

```
The following entries are used to configure the Industrial Graphic Server:

<configurator>

Industrial Graphics Server.Authentication Settings.SilentRegisterAIM=<true or false>

Industrial Graphics Server.Authentication Settings.SilentITGatewayUrl=<SecureGatewayURL>

Industrial Graphics Server.Authentication

Settings.SilentITGatewayUserName=<Domain\username>

Industrial Graphics Server.Authentication Settings.SilentITGatewayPassword=<password>

</configurator>
```

The SilentRegisterAIM parameter is used to select between "User Authentication" (set to true), and "Windows Authentication" (set to false).

Response File Entries to Configure the Historian

```
The following entries are used to configure the AVEVA Historian:

<configurator>

AVEVA Historian.Historian.SilentTCPPort=32568

AVEVA Historian.Historian.SilentchkBoxAutoStartHistorian=true

AVEVA Historian.Historian.SilentDBOption=REBUILD

AVEVA Historian.Historian.SilentDBPath=C:\Program Files\Microsoft SQL

Server\MSSQL15.MSSQLSERVER\MSSQL\DATA

AVEVA Historian.Historian.SilentDataPath=C:\Historian
```

AVEVA

AVEVA Historian.Historian.SilentSQLUserName=SQL User Name AVEVA Historian.Historian.SilentSOLPassword=SOL User PW AVEVA Historian.Historian.SilentBlockStorageMode=1 AVEVA Historian.Historian.SilentGatewayHTTPPort=32569 AVEVA Historian.Historian.SilentGatewayHTTPSPort=32573 // NEW for System Platform 2023 AVEVA Historian.Historian.SilentSecuredCommunication=false // NEW for System Platform 2023 AVEVA Historian.Historian.SilentSelfCertificate=true // If true and SilentCertificateThumbprint is not provided, the certificate is installed automatically) // NEW for System Platform 2023 AVEVA Historian.Historian.SilentCertificateThumbprint = "CERTIFICATE THUMBPRINT WITHOUT SPACES" // Not required if SilentSelfCertificate=True // NEW for System Platform 2023 AVEVA Historian.Extensions.SilentExtensionInstall=true AVEVA Historian.Search.SilentSearchInstall=true // Historian IDAS-only response entries area as follows: AVEVA Historian.IDAS.SilentHistorianServerName = ServerName // Add Historian server name to communicate from Remote IDAS node. // NEW for System Platform 2023 AVEVA Historian.IDAS.SilentHistorianServerPort = 32568 // Historian Server TCP port number // NEW for System Platform 2023 AVEVA Historian.IDAS.SilentHistorianServerUserName = System Platform NetworkAccount // NEW for System Platform 2023 AVEVA Historian.IDAS.SilentHistorianServerPassword = System Platform NetworkAccountPW // NEW for System Platform 2023 </configurator>

Response File Entries to Configure the License Server

The following entries are used to configure the AVEVA License Server:

<configurator>

```
AVEVA Enterprise Licensing Platform.LicAPI2.NewServerName=<license server name>
```

```
AVEVA Enterprise Licensing Platform.LicAPI2.NewPortNumber=55555
```

AVEVA Enterprise Licensing Platform.LicAPI2.NewServerAgentPort=59200

```
// NEW for System Platform 2023
```

```
</configurator>
```

The NewPortNumber default is port 55555.

The NewServerAgentPort default is port 59200.

Note: Flex mode licensing (enabled or disabled) and Flex license type (supervisory or Enterprise) are set through Common Platform entries. See <u>Response File Entries to Configure the Common Platform</u> for details.

Response File Entries to Configure the System Monitor

The following entries are used to configure the AVEVA System Monitor Manager:

<configurator>

AVEVA System Monitor.System Monitor Manager.AgentServerName=ServerName AVEVA System Monitor.System Monitor Manager.HttpPort=<httpPort>



// Optional; required only if you are changing the httpPort value. // If you are using the default, you can remove this parameter and the plugin will use the default httpPort value. AVEVA System Monitor.System Monitor Manager.SslPort=<sslPort> // Optional; required only if you are changing the sslport value. // If you are using the default, you can remove this parameter and the plugin will use the default sslPort value. AVEVA System Monitor.Alert Email Server.SmtpOneClickConfigure=false // Set to true if you will configure the SMTP email server details later from System Monitor web interface. // If you will use the System Monitor web interface to enter the Email Server details, remove SmtpServerNameorIp,SmtpServerPort,SmtpServerSecured,SmtpUserName,SmtpPassword,SmtpFro mRecipientEmailID and SmtpRecipientEmailID. AVEVA System Monitor.Alert Email Server.SmtpServerNameorIp=<MachineNameOrIp> // Remove if SmtpOneClickConfigure=true. AVEVA System Monitor.Alert Email Server.SmtpServerPort=<portNo> // Remove if SmtpOneClickConfigure=true. AVEVA System Monitor.Alert Email Server.SmtpServerSecured =false // Set to true if the SMTP server needs user credentials to access the SMTP server. // Remove if SmtpOneClickConfigure=true. AVEVA System Monitor.Alert Email Server.SmtpUserName=<username> // Remove if SmtpOneClickConfigure=true. AVEVA System Monitor.Alert Email Server.SmtpPassword=<password> // If UserName and Password parameters are not required to access the SMTP server you can remove the parameters. // Remove if SmtpOneClickConfigure=true. AVEVA System Monitor.Alert Email Server.SmtpFromRecipientEmailID=<from_EmailID> // Remove if SmtpOneClickConfigure=true. AVEVA System Monitor.Alert Email Server.SmtpRecipientEmailID=<receipientEmailID> // Provide one or multiple Email Id's separated by semicolon(;). // Remove if SmtpOneClickConfigure=true. AVEVA System Monitor.Alert Email Server.HttpPort=<httpPort> // Optional; required only if you are changing the httpPort value. // If you are using the default, you can remove this parameter and the plugin will use the default httpPort value. AVEVA System Monitor.Alert Email Server.SslPort=<sslPort> // Optional; required only if you are changing the sslport value. // If you are using the default, you can remove this parameter and the plugin will use the default sslPort value. </configurator>

Response File Samples

The response file samples are provided as .txt files on the installation DVD within the following directory path: \InstallFiles\ResponseFiles\Samples\

These samples can be used as templates to initiate the installation of certain products or features during the silent install process.



To use the response file samples as templates

- 1. In Notepad or a similar text editor, open the appropriate response .txt file from the installation DVD. Refer to the <u>Role-Based Response Files</u> or the <u>Product-Based Response Files</u> sections to determine the correct .txt file to use.
- 2. Edit the response file as necessary.
 - a. Edit the UserName, Password and CreateLocal (true or false) responses. The templates contain sample responses on these lines. Delete the sample responses, located to the right of the equal sign (=), and replace with your own response.
 - b. If you install Historian components, provide the SQL Server user name and password.
 - c. Acknowledge the change to the installation of out-of-support third party libraries by setting OutOfSupportRedistConsentForm.SRedistConsent to true. For important details, see <u>Response File Entry</u> to Acknowledge Installation Change Information (Redistributable Libraries).
 - d. Acknowledge that a patch to Manufacturing Execution System and/or Recipe Management may be needed to ensure compatibility with System Platform by setting CompatibilityAlert.SProductCompatibilityConsent to true. For important details, see <u>Response File Entry</u> to Acknowledge Compatibility Requirement.
- 3. Save the file to a directory on your local computer. Note the path and full name of the file.
- 4. From the command line, type the install command and provide the path and filename of the response file you want to use.

Example:D:\setup.exe /silent C:\Documents\DevNode.txt.

In this example, the setup.exe file is in the root directory of the DVD, and the development node response file is on the local C: drive in the specified directory.

5. Press Enter to start the specified installation.

Role-Based Response Files

The following response files install and configure System Platform products to perform the functions of specific roles. All response files listed here can be found on the installation DVD under **InstallFiles\ResponseFiles\Samples**.

Response File	Description
All	Installs and configures every product included with System Platform, except InTouch Access Anywhere Secure Gateway and InTouch Access Anywhere Authentication Server. Since this response file installs the Galaxy Repository, the License Server, System Management Server, and System Monitor Manager are also installed.
AVEVA Enterprise License Server Node	Installs and configures the AVEVA License Server, System Monitor Manager and other required components. The License Manager is not installed.



Response File	Description
AVEVA Historian Client Node	Installs and configures the components required to connect to an existing Historian Server, analyze the data, and provide Application Server run-time components.
AVEVA Historian Server Node	Installs and configures the components required to host a Historian server, analyze the data with a Historian Client, and provide Application Server run-time components.
AVEVA InTouch Access Anywhere Secure Gateway Node	Installs and configures the AVEVA InTouch Access Anywhere Secure Gateway. No other components are installed.
AVEVA System Platform Development Server	Installs and configures the components required to host the development server, in order to develop and test InTouch HMI and AVEVA OMI applications.
	This response file includes the Galaxy Repository, License Server, System Monitor Manager, and System Management Server.
Remote AVEVA System Platform Development Client	Installs and configures the components required to connect to an existing development server in order to develop and test InTouch and System Platform applications.
Runtime Client	Installs and configures the components required to run InTouch HMI, the Historian client, and AppObject server run time.
System Monitor Manager Node	Installs and configures the System Monitor Manager and other required components.

Product-Based Response Files

The following response files install and configure the selected product or products of System Platform. All response files listed here can be found on the installation DVD under **InstallFiles\ResponseFiles\Samples**.

Response File	Description
AVEVA Application Server	Installs and configures the components needed for Application Server run time and development. Since this response file installs the Galaxy Repository, the License Server, System Management Server, and System Monitor Manager are also installed.
AVEVA Application Server and AVEVA OMI Runtime	Installs and configures the components needed for Application Server and AVEVA OMI run-time.
AVEVA Application Server Development	Installs and configures the components needed for Application Server development.
AVEVA Application Server Galaxy Repository	Installs and configures the components needed for the Galaxy Repository. Since this response file installs the Galaxy Repository,


Response File	Description
	the License Server, System Management Server, and System Monitor Manager are also installed.
AVEVA Enterprise License Server Node	Installs and configures the AVEVA License Server and System Monitor Manager and other required components.
AVEVA Historian	Installs and configures the components needed for the Historian.
AVEVA Historian Client	Installs and configures the components needed for the Historian Client.
AVEVA InTouch HMI	Installs and configures the components needed for InTouch run time and development. Since this response file installs the Galaxy Repository, it also installs the License Server, System Management Server, and System Monitor Manager.
AVEVA InTouch HMI Development and Runtime	Installs and configures the components needed for InTouch run time and development. Since this response file installs the Galaxy Repository, it also installs the License Server, System Management Server, and System Monitor Manager.
AVEVA InTouch HMI Runtime Only	Installs and configures the components needed for InTouch run time only.
AVEVA InTouch Access Anywhere and Runtime	Installs and configures the components needed to run InTouch Access Anywhere and the InTouch run-time.
AVEVA InTouch Access Anywhere Authentication Server	Installs and configures the InTouch Access Anywhere Authentication Server. No other components are installed.
AVEVA InTouch Access Anywhere Secure Gateway	Installs the InTouch Access Anywhere Secure Gateway. No other components are installed.
AVEVA Enterprise Licensing Platform	Installs the AVEVA License Server, License Manager, System Monitor Manager and other required components.
System Monitor Manager	Installs the System Monitor Manager and other required components.



Appendix B

Single Product Installation

You can create an alternative installation media source if you are installing only Historian, Historian Client, or the Application Server runtime, and you want to reduce network usage. This alternative installation source will be much smaller than the full set of installation files, and thus will be easier to send to remote locations. This is of particular value if your network connection to the remote site is slow or unreliable, and any of the following, or similar circumstances, apply:

- You have multiple nodes at a remote site on which you want to install only Historian, Historian Client, or the Application Server runtime.
- A firewall at the remote site restricts most off-site access, and having a local copy of the installation files is easier to manage than having to modify the firewall.
- Installing from a WAN-based share is impossible due to the speed or reliability of the network connection.

With this procedure, you will:

- 1. Create a new installation source that contains a subset of the installation files contained on the System Platform installation DVD.
- 2. Install Historian, Historian Client, or the Application Server runtime from this subset of files.

Copying the files, rather than installing from a remote location, eliminates the possibility of a time-out during installation.

Guidelines for Creating a Compact Installation Source

Important: This process can only be used for installing Historian, Historian Client, or the Application Server runtime. Other product configurations are not supported.

The workflow for creating the compact installation source is:

- 1. Copy the entire contents of the System Platform installation DVD.
- 2. Delete language and product components that are not needed.
- 3. Copy the directory containing the remaining components to either:
 - To the node where you will install the product.
 - To a CD or DVD to be used as the installation disk.

When you run the installation program, components that were deleted will show as disabled (grayed-out) and unavailable for selection.



Upgrading from a Previous Version

Do not delete folders for products that are already installed. The upgrade process will not complete if you do not upgrade all products previously installed on the node. For example, if both Historian and Historian Client are installed on the node, you must upgrade both.

Preparation for Installing a Single Product

To install Historian, Historian Client, Application Server, or InTouch, you can choose not to install or copy unnecessary files.

- The root directory contains the installation program (setup.exe) and several document files. Two files in the root directory are absolutely required: Autorun.inf (1 KB) and Setup.exe (about 2,200 KB). The remaining files are documents: *Getting Started with AVEVA Licensing*, the *System Platform Installation Guide*, the *System Platform Virtual Implementation Guide*, the *System Platform Getting Started Guide*, and the *System Platform Readme*.
- The entire InstallITK folder (about 9 MB) is required.

The following table shows which subfolders in the InstallFiles folder are required for Historian, Historian Client, Application Server (including AVEVA OMI run time), and InTouch HMI development and run time. You can delete folders that are not required for the product you are installing. All file and folder sizes are approximate and provided for reference only.

InstallFiles Folder (Component)	Approx Folder Size	Historian	Historian Client	Application Server	InTouch (Run time only or run time and development)		
CD-ApplicationServer	1.44 GB	Required	Optional	Required	Required		
CD-ASBFramework	361 MB	Required	Required	Required	Required		
CD-Gateway	67 MB	Optional	Optional	Optional	Optional		
CD-Historian	539 MB	Required	Optional	Optional	Optional		
CD-HistorianClient	56 MB	Optional	Required	Required	Required		
CD-InSightPublisher	30 MB	Optional	Optional	Optional	Optional		
CD-Intouch	369 MB	Optional	Optional	Optional	Required for English		
If InTouch is required, delete language folders that are not needed (CD-InTouch = English). CD-IntouchCommon and CD- IntouchWebClient are required when InTouch is installed (all languages).							
CD-IntouchCommon	334 MB	Optional	Optional	Optional	Required		
CD-IntouchFrench	354 MB	Optional	Optional	Optional	Required for French		
CD-IntouchGerman	350 MB	Optional	Optional	Optional	Required for German		



					InTouch
InstallFiles Folder (Component)	Approx Folder Size	Historian	Historian Client	Application Server	(Run time only or run time and development)
CD-Intouch Japanese	356 MB	Optional	Optional	Optional	Required for Japanese
CD-Intouch SChinese	359 MB	Optional	Optional	Optional	Required for Chinese
CD-IntouchWebClient	79 MB	Optional	Optional	Optional	Required
CD-IntouchWebClient is required when	InTouch is insta	illed (all language	s).		
CD-Language Assistant	162 MB	Optional	Optional	Optional	Optional
CD-LicAPI	113 MB	Required	Required	Required	Required
CD-Licensing	115 MB	Required	Required	Required	Required
CD-NGVisualization	443 MB	Optional	Optional	Required	Required
CD-OIEngine	157 MB	Required	Required	Required	Required
CD-OIGATEWAY	20 MB	Required	Required	Required	Required
CD-SentinelAim	7 MB	Required	Required	Required	Required
CD-SentinelManager	33 MB	Optional	Optional	Optional	Optional
CD-Server	50 MB	Required	Optional	Optional	Optional
CD-UnsupportedRedist	0 MB	Optional	Optional	Optional	Optional
CoexistenceUpdates More details shown below	258 MB	Optional	Optional	Optional	Optional
External	2 MB	Required	Required	Required	Required
OutofSupportRedist More details shown below	41 MB	Optional	Optional	Optional	Optional
Redist	538 MB	See note (DOTNET)	See note (DOTNET)	See note (DOTNET)	See note (DOTNET)
DOTNET	175 MB	Optional	Optional	Optional	Optional
If .NET version 4.8 or higher is already i	nstalled, you ca	n remove the DO	TNET folder from	Redist.	
MSOLEDBSQL	11 MB	Required	Required	Required	Required
PreReqInstaller	0 MB	Required	Required	Required	Required
SQL2019EXPRESSCORE	255 MB	Optional	Optional	Optional	Optional



InstallFiles Folder (Component)	Approx Folder Size	Historian	Historian Client	Application Server	InTouch (Run time only or run time and development)			
See Note, below, about removing subfolder SQL2019EXPRESSCORE from Redist.								
VC2012U4	13 MB	Required	Required	Required	Required			
VC2013U4	26 MB	Required	Required	Required	Required			
VC2019	37 MB	Required	Required	Required	Required			
ResponseFiles	0 MB	Optional	Optional	Optional	Optional			
Support	0 MB	Required	Required	Required	Required			
UpgradeSupport	38 MB	Required	Required	Required	Required			

Note: The Redist folder contains SQL Server Express in folder SQL2019EXPRESSCORE. You can remove Redist if: - You are installing Historian Client. SQL Server is not required.

- You are installing Application Server, InTouch, or Historian, and SQL Server is already installed. See <u>SQL Server Requirements</u> for information about supported versions of SQL Server.

CoexistenceUpdates: If AVEVA[™] Manufacturing Execution System or certain versions of AVEVA[™] Recipe Management are present, you may need the contents of this folder to ensure compatibility with System Platform 2023. Affected products are:

- Manufacturing Execution System 6.2.0. Older versions must be updated to version 6.2 and then patched.
- Recipe Management 4.5.0 and 4.6.0. These two most recent versions must be patched. Versions prior to 4.5 are compatible with System Platform 2023 and do not require patching.

Out-of-Support assemblies: If needed for compatibility with migrated galaxies or custom objects, you may need to include this folder which includes the following assemblies:

Redistributable Description	Folder/Assembly Name
Microsoft SQL Server 2012 Management Objects SP2	SQL2012SP2FeaturePack\ SharedManagementObjects.msi (x64 and x86 versions)
(11.2.5058.0)	SQL2012SP2FeaturePack\ SQLSysClrTypes.msi (x64 and x86 versions)
Microsoft Visual C++ 2008 Redistributable	VC90SP1/vcredist_x86.exe
Microsoft Visual C++ 2010 Redistributable	VC10SP1/vcredist_x64.exe VC10SP1/vcredist_x86.exe

Optional Folder for Historian

The CD-InTouch folder contains a database purge utility that Historian uses (this utility is not called when blockbased event history is utilized). Without this folder, Historian cannot purge the A2ALMDB alarm database and an



error will be generated (this does not occur with block-based history). If you are installing Historian Client only, this utility is not called and the folder can be deleted without any issues.

Note: If you are installing Historian and the CD-Intouch has been deleted, you will not be able to purge the A2ALMDB alarm database and an error will be generated (does not apply if you are using block-based history). However, the installation will complete successfully.

Creating the Installation Source and Installing the Selected Component

To create an installation source

1. Copy the entire contents of the System Platform installation DVD to a local folder on your computer or to a network share location.

This location will be used to prepare for the installation or upgrade of the product you are installing.

Important: You must copy the entire DVD. The root directory from the DVD and all files in it must be in place and completely intact.

2. Navigate to the location where you copied the DVD. Delete the files, components and language folders that you do not need.

Now you are ready to install or upgrade the product(s) using either of the methods described below.

To install or upgrade a single product

Direct installation from the copy location (install locally or on a different network node):

1. Remove the original System Platform installation DVD from the drive.

Important: When you run setup.exe, it checks for the System Platform installation DVD. If the installation DVD is available, it will be used instead of the copy location.

- 2. Navigate to the copy location.
- 3. Make sure you have deleted the folders you do not need.
- 4. Run setup.exe. Components that were deleted will be grayed-out and unavailable for installation.
- 5. If this is a new installation (not an upgrade), select the target location when you are prompted.

Installation from a CD or DVD:

- 1. Create a CD or DVD from the copy location after deleting the folders you do not need.
- 2. Run setup.exe from the CD/DVD on each node. Components that were deleted will be grayed-out and unavailable for installation.



Appendix C

Ports Used by System Platform Products

System Platform Ports

The following table lists ports used by System Platform products.

	Note:	Firewall	settings for	all destination	ports must allow	INBOUND	connections.
--	-------	----------	--------------	-----------------	------------------	---------	--------------

Product	Process Name	Port	Add'l Port	Config- urable	Description	Protocol
Application Server	aaBootstrap.exe	30000		Yes	Local redundancy primary port (WinPlatform)	TCP and UDP
		30001		Yes	Local redundancy message port (WinPlatform)	ТСР
		49152 to 65535		No	DCOM port range	TCPV6
		135		No	DCOM and RPC	ТСР
		139		No	DCOM and Netbios (Bootstrap)	ТСР
		445		No	DCOM and Netbios (Bootstrap)	ТСР
	aaGlobalDataCache MonitorSvr.exe	49152 to 65535		No	DCOM port range	TCPV6
	aaGR.exe	49152 to 65535		No	DCOM port range	TCPV6
		8090		Yes	Configurable through registry: HKLM\SOFTWARE\Ar chestrA\Framework\R emoting with key "defaultPort" and	ТСР



Product	Process Name	Port	Add'l Port	Config- urable	Description	Protocol
					Value as <port number> string</port 	
		49152 to 65535		No	DCOM port range	TCP and TCPV6
	aaEngine.exe	32568		Yes	"TCP Port" (WinPlatform Engine advanced settings)	ТСР
	aaObjectViewer.exe	49152 to 65535		No	DCOM port range	TCPV6
	aaPIM.exe	49152 to 65535		No	DCOM port range	TCPV6
	aaPlatformInfoSvr. exe	49152 to 65535		No	DCOM port range	TCPV6
	aa User Validator. exe	49152 to 65535		No	DCOM port range	TCPV6
	NmxSvc.exe	5026		Yes	Message Exchange port number (WinPlatform)	ТСР
	Multi Galaxy	808		No	ASBMxDataProvider Service	ТСР
		808		No	Galaxy Pairing	тср
		808		No	ASBGRBrowsing Service	ТСР
		808		No	ASBAuthentication Service	ТСР
PCS/ Historian		3575		Yes	Event Service	ТСР
PCS/ Historian Service (PCS InProc Hosting)		3586		Yes	EventHistorian Service	ТСР
PCS	PCS.IdentityManager. Host.exe SSDP	1900		Yes		UDP
	Asb.Discovery.exe, PCS.IdentityManager .Host.exe	443		Yes		HTTPS



Product	Process Name	Port	Add'l Port	Config- urable	Description	Protocol
		7084		Yes	System authentication (only available during node registration)	ТСР
		7085		Yes	System authentication (only available during node pairing)	ТСР
	Asb.Watchdog.exe, Asb.ServiceManager .exe, PCS.IdentityManager .Host.exe	80		Yes		НТТР
		any		Yes	OPC UA Server	ТСР
Historian		135			MDAS -Used by client nodes prior to ASP 2012 R2	TCP and UDP
		136			IDAS and Remote IDAS prior to Historian 2017	TCP and UDP
		137			IDAS and Remote IDAS prior to Historian 2017	TCP and UDP
		138			IDAS and Remote IDAS prior to Historian 2017	TCP and UDP
		139			IDAS and Remote IDAS prior to Historian 2017	TCP and UDP
		445			File and printer sharing	ТСР
		445			Remote IDAS prior to Historian 2017	TCP and UDP
		1433		Yes	SQL Server - Used by Historian Client. Historian and Historian Client 2017 and later support non-default ports.	ТСР



Product	Process Name	Port	Add'l Port	Config- urable	Description	Protocol
		1434			SQL Server Browser	UDP
	aahClientAccess Point.exe	32568		Yes	Historian, Remote IDAS 2017 and later, and Redundant AppServer node./ HCAL/HCAP	ТСР
Historian Insight, OData	aahGateway.exe	32569		Yes	Configured in Historian System Parameter "GatewayTcpPort."Co nfigurable in Historian 2017 and later	ТСР
Licensing	License Manager	80		Yes	License Manager	
	License Server Core Service	55555		Yes	License Server Core Service	
	License Agent	59200		Yes	License Agent	
	License Manager to Activation server outbound	443		Yes	License Manager to Activation server outbound	
OI Server	SI Direct	102			OI Server	
	МВТСР	502			OI Server	
	АВТСР	2221			OI Server	
		2222			OI Server	
		2223			OI Server	
	S/L OI Servers	5413			OI Server	
	DBServer	5481		Yes	ATS	тср
	ABCIP	44818			OI Server	ТСР
	GESRTP OI Server	18245			OI Server	
OI Gateway	OI Gateway	1883, 8883		Yes	OI Gateway MQTT connectivity	
InTouch Access	AccessServer64.	8080			Server	ТСР
Anywhere	exe	57733			Server	ТСР
		57734			Server	ТСР



Product	Process Name	Port	Add'l Port	Config- urable	Description	Protocol
		57735			Server	тср
		3399			Server	тср
	EricomSecure	443			Secure Gateway	тср
	Gateway.exe	57111			Secure Gateway	UDP
Intouch Web Client	InTouchWeb. ContentHost.exe	60152	60153		InTouch Web Client	ТСР
	InTouchWeb.Host. exe	60236	60237 60238 60311 60312		InTouch Web Client	ТСР
	InTouchWeb.Server. exe	60161	60162		InTouch Web Client	ТСР
Intouch	InTouchDataService. exe, used for InTouchiData	58398	60118		InTouchiData	ТСР
Suitelink		5413				ТСР
		49152 to 65000				ТСР
Alarm Logger	aaLogger.exe	1041			Alarm Logger	ТСР
		5004			Alarm Logger	тср
	Alg.exe	1087			Alarm Logger	тср
Alarm Manager	Alarmmgr.exe	51218				тср
System Monitor		80		Yes	НТТР	
		443		Yes	нттрѕ	
		25		Yes	SMTP	
		587		Yes	SMTPS	



Appendix D

Common System Platform Processes

AVEVA System Platform Processes

The following table describes AVEVA Application Server other required System Platform processes. For a description of services associated the the AVEVA Historian, see the AVEVA Historian Administration Guide.

Service/Process Name	Executable Name	Description						
Application Server/System Platform Services								
AVEVA Bootstrap (aaBootstrap)	aaBootstrap.exe	Utility to bootstrap an Application Server run time to support code-module deployment and process monitoring.						
Engine Module (aaEngine)	aaEngine.exe	Supports the creation, deletion, startup, and shutdown of objects hosted by the Engine object as the hosted objects are deployed and undeployed.						
GalaxyRepository (aaGR)	aaGR.exe	The Galaxy Repository service to process requests to the Application Server configuration subsystem.						
AVEVA Global Data Cache Monitor Server (aaGlobaldata CacheMonitorSvr)	aaGlobaldata CacheMonitorSvr.exe	Global Data Cache Monitor service to process file change notifications.						
Operations Control Logger Service (aaLogger)	aaLogger.exe	Receives log messages from System Platform component products and stores them in a file.						
AVEVA UserValidator (aaUserValidator)	aaUserValidator.exe	User validator service to process user validations for the System Platform framework.						
Platform Info Server Module (aaPlatformInfoSvr)	aaPlatformInfoSvr.exe	Server module for the Network Account.						



Service/Process Name	Executable Name	Description
PCS/ASB Services		
AVEVA Server Manager (AsbServiceManager)	Asb.ServiceManager.exe	Starts and stops hosted services on behalf of the watchdog. The Watchdog is a high- privilege process, which for security purposes, is not intended for hosted services. Therefore, the Watchdog delegates the tasks of starting and stopping monitored services to this lower-privileged process.
AVEVA Watchdog (Watchdog_Service)	Asb.Watchdog.exe	Ensure services that provide discoverable endpoints are running. The Watchdog is for responsible for starting these services, monitors their health, restarts them as needed, and stops them when the Watchdog stops. The Watchdog also hosts other services such as the Deploy Service and Service Content Provider.
Licensing Services		
License Server Agent Service	LicServer.Windows Service.exe	Provides the data model to operate the License Server.
License Server Core Service	AELicServer.exe	Provides the data model for the FNE Manager.
License Manager Web Service	LMWeb.Windows Service.exe	Provides web access for the License Manager.

For more information on Windows services, see your Microsoft documentation.



Appendix E

User Accounts and Groups Created by System Platform Installation

This section describes the user accounts and groups used by System Platform It is divided by product.

Application Server OS Groups and Accounts

For System Platform 2023, Application Server creates and uses the following user accounts, service accounts, and user groups.

Name	Category	Description
aaConfigTools	Group	Provides permissions to users to connect to a Galaxy from the IDE.
Performance Monitor Users	Group	Membership in the Performance Monitor Users group allows the Network Account to function without elevated privileges. See Network Account Membership, below, for more information.
PSMS Administrators	Group	Membership in the PSMS Administrators group allows the Network Account to function without elevated privileges. See Network Account Membership, below, for more information.
aaGalaxyOwner	User Account	This user account is the owner (dbo) of all Galaxy databases in your system.
NT SERVICE\ aaPIM	Windows Service Account	This is the platform installation manager. It is responsible for installing platforms. It is added to the Administrators group as a service account.

Network Account Membership

The Network Account is used for off-line communications between System Platform nodes. To support Application Server, it may have membership in some or all of the following OS Groups, with the requirements and limitations as described below. Note that membership in some of these groups is dependent on whether or not this is a new installation or an upgrade of an older version of System Platform.



Group Name	Description
Administrators	The Network Account will be part of the Administrators group ONLY if you are upgrading from System Platform 2017 Update 2 or prior release. If only Application Server is installed, you can remove the Network Account from this group.
Distributed COM Users	The Network Account will be part of the Distributed COM Users group ONLY if you are upgrading from System Platform 2017 Update 2 or prior release. If only Application Server is installed, you can remove the Network Account from this group.
Performance Monitor Users	This is a new OS Group added for System Platform 2017 Update 3 and later releases. It allows the Network Account to function without elevated privileges. Do not remove this group, and do not remove the Network Account from this group.
PSMS Administrators	This is a new OS Group added for System Platform 2017 Update 3 and later releases. It allows the Network Account to function without elevated privileges. Do not remove this group, and do not remove the Network Account from this group.

InTouch HMI OS Groups and Accounts

For System Platform 2023, InTouch HMI creates and uses the following user accounts, service accounts, and user groups.

Name	Category	Description
aaInTouchUsers	Group	Membership in this user group is required for viewing graphics from an application in the web browser.
ArchestrA WebHosting	Group	This user group supports the HTTPS protocol for the InTouch Web Client.
ASBSolution	Group	This user group provides the File System and Registry permissions required by the PCS Framework.
Administrators	Group	The Network Account may be included in the Administrators group if you have upgraded from version System Platform 2017 Update 2 or earlier.
NT SERVICE\ InTouchData Service	Windows Service Account	This Service Account is used by the InTouch Web Client or AVEVA OMI ViewApps to access InTouch tags.
NT SERVICE\ InTouchWeb	Windows Service Account	This Service Account is used by the InTouch Web Client to browse application graphics from a web browser.



InTouch Web Client OS Groups and Accounts

To support the HTTPS protocol for InTouch Web Client, Service Accounts added for InTouch HMI are given membership in the following OS Groups:

Group	Account	Description
ArchestrAWebInTouchDataYou can remove these service accountHostingServiceyou are not using the InTouch Web	You can remove these service accounts from group if you are not using the InTouch Web Client or accessing	
	InTouchWeb	InTouch tags from an AVEVA OMI ViewApp.
ASBSolution	olution InTouchData You can remove these service accou Service if you are not using the InTouch Web	You can remove these service accounts from the group if you are not using the InTouch Web Client or accessing
	InTouchWeb	InTouch tags from an AVEVA OMI ViewApp.
Performance Monitor Users	Network Account	This is a new OS Group added for System Platform 2017 Update 3 and later releases. It allows the Network Account to function without elevated privileges. Do not remove this group, and do not remove the Network Account from this group.
PSMS Administrators	Network Account	This is a new OS Group added for System Platform 2017 Update 3 and later releases. It allows the Network Account to function without elevated privileges. Do not remove this group, and do not remove the Network Account from this group.

Historian Server OS Groups and Accounts

For System Platform 2023, Historian Server creates and uses the following user accounts, service accounts, and user groups.

Name	Category	Description
aaAdministrators	Group	This user group provides read/write access for Historian Data, Batch Logon Privilege, write access to ArchestrA registry Hive and additional privileges on Runtime Database. A SQLServer service account (MSSQLServer) is added to this group to allow permitted users to perform data insertion to Historian through SQL.
aaPowerUsers	Group	Membership in this user group provides read/write access for Historian Data and Batch Logon Privilege. This user group also supports the HTTPS protocol for the InTouch Web Client.



Name	Category	Description
aaReplicationUsers	Group	Membership in this user group allows its members to replicate data (Tier 2), and provides Batch Logon privilege.
aaUsers	Group	Membership in this user group provides read access for Historian data.
NT SERVICE\ aahClientAccessPoi nt	Windows Service Account	The Client Point Access Point Service is the data ingest layer.
NT SERVICE\ aahSearch Indexer	Windows Service Account	The Search Indexer Service indexes the tags to Historian Server.
NT SERVICE\ InSQLConfiguration	Windows Service Account	The InSQL Configuration Service manages the Historian Services.
NT SERVICE\ InSQLEvent System	Windows Service Account	The InSQL Event Service is the account for the Classic Event System service.
NT SERVICE\ InSQLManual Storage	Windows Service Account	The InSQL Manual Storage Service is the data import service that processes CSV file imports.
NT SERVICE\ InSQLStorage	Windows Service Account	The InSQL Storage Service is the Classic Storage Service that transforms data from the legacy IDAS service.
NT SERVICE\ InSQLIndexing	Windows Service Account	The InSQL Indexing Service is for indexing the History Blocks.
NT SERVICE\ InSQLIOServer	Windows Service Account	The InSQL IO Service provides access to data through Suitelink.
NT SERVICE\ InSQLSystemDriver	Windows Service Account	The InSQL System Driver Service captures data for System Tags.
NT SERVICE\ aahInSight	Windows Service Account	The aahInSight Service is for AVEVA InSight.
NT SERVICE\ aahSupervisor	Windows Service Account	The aahSupervisor Service is for the InSight Publisher host process.

Historian Account Group Membership

The following accounts and groups support Historian functionality:



Group	Account	Description
ArchestrAWeb Hosting	aahClientAccessPoi nt	aahClientAccessPoint is added to this group to allow access to the PCS certificate used for encrypting the transport.
	InSQLIOServer	InSQLIOServer is added to this group to allow Secure Suitelink communication.
Performance Monitor Users	Historian Service (multiple Windows Service Accounts)	The Historian services are added to this group to acquire the performance counter information that will be historized as system tags.
Performance Log Users	Historian Service (multiple Windows Service Accounts)	The Historian services are added to this group to allow logging performance counters.

Platform Common Services Accounts and OS Groups

For System Platform 2023, Platform Common Services creates and uses the following user accounts, service accounts, and user groups.

Name	Category	Description
AsbCoreServices	Group	This user group contains the file system and registry permissions required by the core services of the PCS (ASB) framework. Since these processes are started by the ASB Watchdog, the only user account in this group should be the NT SERVICE\Watchdog_Service virtual service account.
ArchestrAWeb Hosting	Group	Members of this user group can listen to the shared HTTP (default=80) and HTTPS ports (default=443). Members of this group also have access to the private key of the security certificate used to bind to the HTTPS port.
		To enable a secure SuiteLink connection, add the standard user to this group on the server side. For details, see "Secured SuiteLink Connection" in the AVEVA Communication Drivers Pack User Guide, available at [Installation Media]\InstallFiles\CD- OIEngine\Docs\OICore.pdf
ASBSolution	Group	Membership in this user group provides the File System and Registry permissions required by the PCS/ASB Framework.
NT SERVICE\ Watchdog_Service	Windows Service Account	Watchdog_Service runs as a high-privileged virtual service account. The group policy for this service requires AeServiceLogonRight.



Name	Category	Description
NT SERVICE\ AsbService Manager	Windows Service Account	AsbServiceManager runs as the low-privileged virtual service account. The group policy for this service requires AeServiceLogonRight.
ASBCertificate RenewalService	Local Service Account	ASBCertificateRenewalService runs a local account, and is normally in a stopped state. It is only triggered by the Asb.Watchdog process, based on the validity of the local certificate. When the certificate is renewed, the service is stopped. The group policy for this service requires AeServiceLogonRight.
NT SERVICE\ AIMTokenHost	Windows Service Account	AIMTokenHost runs as a virtual service account once the System Management Server is configured. This is for the PCS.IdentityManager.Host.
NT SERVICE\ ArchestraData Store	Windows Service Account	ArchestraDataStore runs as a virtual service account. It starts and should continue to run once the installation is complete.

PCS Account Group Membership

Group	Account	Description
ArchestrAWeb Hosting	AIMTokenHost AsbService Manager	All processes which need access to the private key of certificates should be part of the ArchestrAWebHosting user group. To enable a secure SuiteLink connection, add the standard user to this group on the server side. For details, see "Secured SuiteLink Connection" in the <i>AVEVA Communication Drivers Pack User Guide</i> , available at [Installation Media]\InstallFiles\CD- OIEngine\Docs\OICore.pdf.
ASBSolution	InTouchData Service InTouchWeb	These two Windows Service Accounts are not technically PCS services, but are added to this group to support the InTouch Web Client.
Users	AsbService Manager	NT SERVICE\AsbServiceManager is added to Users group is for backward compatibility. The legacy ASBService user was part of the Users group, and was replaced by the AsbServiceManager as of ASB version 4.2. If not needed for compatibility, AsbServiceManager can be removed.

The following accounts and groups support Historian functionality:

AVEVA License Manager OS Groups and Accounts



For System Platform 2023, AVEVA License Manager installs the following User Group. No users are added to the group by default. This group can be deleted if the user(s) accessing the License Server and License Manager is an administrator on that computer.

Name	Category	Description
AELicMgr	Group	Members of this group are granted non-administrator permission to access the License Server and/or License Manager installed on that node.

System Monitor OS Groups and Accounts

For System Platform 2023, AVEVA System Monitor creates and uses the following service accounts.

Name	Category	Description
NT SERVICE\ psmsconsolSrv	Windows Service Account	These Windows services are added to the local Administrators user group when System Monitor is installed.
NT SERVICE\ simHostSrv		
NT SERVICE\ adpHostSrv		



Index

1

• 16 Pen Trend 32

A

- A2ALMDB database 135
- aaAdministrators group 118
- aaConfigSQL 119
- aaGalaxyOwner user account 118
- acquistion
 - loading 141
- ActiveEvent 159
- ActiveX and .NET Controls 166
 - aaHistClientQuery 166
 - aaHistClientTrend 166
- Antivirus Software 161
- Application Server
 - hardware requirements 100
 - user account requirements 30
- ASBService 121
- ASBSolution 121

В

- Bootstrap
 - upgrading 96
- building block controls
 - aaHistClientTagPicker 166
 - aaHistClientTimeRangePicker 166

С

- Change Network Account utility 117
- common components 160, 100
- configuration utility 71
- configuring products 47

D

- database
 - configuring 71
 - disk space requirements 135
- disk sizing 134
- disk space
 - history blocks 136



- planning 135
- Е
- Enhanced Security Mode 119
- event data
 - migrating from older versions 164
- F
- fault-tolerant servers 133
- G
- Galaxy database, migrating 102
- Galaxy Repository
 - upgrading 101
 - upgrading with the Bootstrap 96
 - upgrading with the Bootstrap and IDE 96
- Н
- hardware recommendations
 - storage 135
- Historian
 - components 159
 - installation 160
 - loading 141
 - memory requirements 131, 140
 - repair 168
 - requirements 131
 - upgrading 168
- Historian Client 165
- Historian Client
 - Query 165
 - Report 166
 - Trend 165
 - Workbook 166
 - components 165
- Historian Database Export/Import Utility
 - requirements 133
- history blocks
 - disk space requirements 136
- history data
 - disk space requirements 136
 - migrating from older versions 162
- Holding database
 - disk space 135

I

- IDASs
 - installing 159
 - performance 142
 - requirements 133
 - security 134



- IDE 102
 - upgrading 102
 - upgrading with the Bootstrap and Galaxy Repository 96
- InBatch 145
- installation 158
 - Historian 158
 - Historian Client 167
 - Historian installation 158
 - modifying 109
 - repairing 111
 - silent 169
 - System Platform 32
- InTouch
 - Window Viewer 145
- L
- LAN 143
- legacy mode 119
- legacy software 100
- License Viewer 160
- licensing 126
- loading
 - Wonderware Historian 141
- Μ
- Management Console 159
- Manufacturing Execution Module 145
- memory requirements 131, 140
- Microsoft Client Utilities 158
- Microsoft SQL Server
 - installation 158
- Ν
- named pipes 158
- Network account
 - requirements for use with Application Server 30
- network cards 143
- network protocol 144
- networking 143
- NTFS 135

0

- operating system
 - non-English 144
 - upgrading 100

Ρ

- performance 140
 - examples 145
 - IDASs 142
- physical memory 131



- port
 - SQL Server 124
- port, non-default
 - SQL Server 124
- process network 143
- products
 - configuring 47
- protocols 144
 - recommendations 143

R

- RAID 135
- repair 168
 - Wonderware Historian 162
 - Wonderware Historian Client 168
- requirements 131, 166, 100
 - disk space 135
 - Historian 131
 - IDASs 133
 - System Management Console 133
- reserved names
 - system 121
- response files 171
- retrieval
 - loading 141
- roaming profiles 167
- Runtime database
 - disk space 135
 - migration 162

S

- SCSI 135
- security
 - modes 119
 - remote IDASs 134
- silent installation 169
- software requirements 100
 - Historian 131
 - IDASs 133
 - System Management Console 133
- SPCPro 145, 32
- SQL Server
 - Historian installation 158
 - incompatible version installed 124
 - SQL Server language 166
 - SQL Server 124, 100
 - SQL Server, not found 123
 - SQL Server, untested version installed 123
 - versions 122
- storage





- disk sizing 134
- hardware recommendations 135
- loading 141
- SuiteLink 143
- summary data
 - migrating from older versions 164
- system
 - sizing 145
- System Management Console
 - installing 159
 - requirements 133
- System Platform 32
- Т
- TCP/IP 143, 158
- tiered historian
 - sizing 151

U

- uninstall
 - Historian Client 168
 - System Platform component 115
- upgrade
 - basic steps 100
 - Galaxy Repository 101
 - IDE 102
 - operating system 100
 - redundant pairs 104
 - run-time nodes 103
 - SQL Server 100

V

• virtual memory 131

w

• WAN 143